

Page 21

1568/3338.

A NEW
INTRODUCTION
TO THE
LATIN LANGUAGE:
BEING AN ATTEMPT
TO EXEMPLIFY THE
LATIN SYNTAX,
AND
RENDER FAMILIAR TO THE MIND
THE
GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION
OF THIS
USEFUL LANGUAGE:

CONTAINING
CRITICAL and EXPLANATORY *NOTES* on all the
RULES of GOVERNMENT and AGREEMENT.

BY CALEB ALEXANDER, A. M.

Author of "A GRAMMATICAL SYSTEM OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE,"—"GRAMMATICAL ELEMENTS,"—"A GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTE OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE," and "AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SPEAKING AND WRITING OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE."

Published according to Act of Congress.

WORCESTER, (MASSACHUSETTS)
PRINTED BY ISAIAH THOMAS, jun.
FOR ISAIAH THOMAS:

SOLD AT THE WORCESTER BOOKSTORE, AND BY THE BOOKSELLERS IN BOSTON.

—1795.—





PREFACE.

TO understand all the beauties of any language, the knowledge of Grammar is very necessary. A person, it is true, may converse in his own language, read the writings of others, and comprehend their sentiments, without being versed in the principles of grammar. If, however, he be destitute of this knowledge, he will, in his conversation and writing, be guilty of using many barbarous expressions, and his words will be often so joined together as to cast a great, if not total obscurity over his ideas. In reading the writings of others, he will also be exposed, in many instances, to mistake their meaning and consequently run himself into confusion. Supposing, however, that by the mere force of habit, or genius, he may rise superior to all these inconveniencies, yet, if destitute of grammatical knowledge, many beauties even of his own native tongue will certainly lie beyond his comprehension. In the sentences of any language, there is a mutual dependence and connexion between the words.

One

One word is so dependent on another and necessarily connected with it, that if these are destroyed, or not understood, the beauty of the sentence will escape the notice of the reader. And, as all languages are composed of words and sentences, connected together by certain rules that custom has established, and as there is a great variety of sentences, especially in the more useful and polite languages, so it is highly expedient that these established rules should be known, in order that the beauties of the language may appear in their full lustre.

To form an universal, or polite scholar, former ages have deemed the knowledge of the Latin Language necessary, and with this opinion later ages have concurred. For this purpose the study of this language has been introduced into *public schools, academies, colleges and universities*; and its knowledge has been justly esteemed a necessary part of education. To describe the advantages resulting from *this science* is foreign to our present subject. It may not be improper, however, to observe, that the study of this language opens to the mind a very extensive field, and brings one acquainted with the ancient *poets, philosophers, historians, politicians, generals, kings,* and the *inventors* of useful arts; to which may be added an acquaintance with the *customs, laws and religions* of different nations. A subject, one would think, sufficient to rouse the mind from inactivity, and stimulate to the acquisition of glory.

AGAINST

P R E F A C E.

AGAINST these remarks it has been objected, I am sensible, that all this knowledge may be obtained by reading in our own language, the things to which allusion is here made. To this it may be replied, that the objection will appear groundless when it shall be considered, that the original beauty of composition is much injured by a translation; and it is altogether impossible to enter so thoroughly into an author's *views and feelings*, when the fire of his genius is partly extinguished by translating his ideas into a language, different from that in which he wrote. And it may, moreover, be said, that a becoming deference to the sentiment and practice of the most brilliant characters, since *the reformation*, is sufficient to evince the propriety of initiating our youth, especially those designed for the learned professions, into the knowledge of the Greek and Latin tongues.

SOME may think, perhaps, that these observations are impertinently introduced in this PREFACE, as the following work relates *wholly* to the subject of *Syn-tax*. But as *Scientiarum Janitrix Grammatica*,* it was not improper to say something in commendation of that language, to which this work is intended as *An Introduction*.

THAT the *Classic Authors* may be read and understood without knowing the *Rules* of grammar, is a sentiment advocated by a few. But the advocates

* Grammar is the portress of the sciences.

of this sentiment are, in general, men who are thorough adepts both in grammar and the learned languages. Having impressed on their minds the connexion and dependence of words, and easily comprehending *the sense* of the authors they read, they are extremely apt to feel, that others need not perplex themselves with studying those rules, which they learned in younger life. But the falsity of the reasoning is very plain. The sentiment is built on the principle, that others can easily understand without any study, the agreement and government of words and sentences, to gain which knowledge they were obliged to spend many laborious months and years.

Two reasons were influential to begin and finish the following *Introduction*. 1. Some apparent deficiencies in Mr. Clarke's "*Introduction to the Making of Latin*." 2. To prevent the necessity of sending to Europe for books, that are wanted and used in American schools. On these reasons I crave the indulgence of making some remarks.

I. SOME apparent deficiencies in Mr. Clarke's "*Introduction to the Making of Latin*."

MR. CLARKE'S *Introduction* is a work for which I have a very high esteem, and feel no disposition to depreciate its merits. He has shewn great ingenuity in the arrangement of his rules, and much propriety and reading, in the collecting and translating of the examples to be made into *good Latin*. He is, however deficient in some things, that are essential to a
work

P R E F A C E.

work of this kind. Among which may be reckoned, the entire omission of some rules, that are of frequent use in the language; many of his rules are exemplified with no more than one or two short sentences; his critical remarks and explanatory notes are too few for the benefit of the student; and his *Succinct* account of the affairs of ancient Greece and Rome, is too *long*, and raises the price of the book too *high*, for a school book.

To remedy these defects was one design in composing and publishing this subsequent Introduction. An attempt has been accordingly made to exemplify every rule with many instances of false grammar. In the *Appendix*, the student will find many critical and explanatory notes, which will greatly assist him, either in understanding the several rules, in each separate chapter, or inform him of the exceptions and deviations from the general rules. By often recurring to the *Appendix*, when he is employed in the *pleasing task of Making Latin*, he will find, it is conjectured, much assistance.

THE examples of *bad Latin* are collected chiefly from *Cicero*, *Virgil*, *Horace* and *Erasmus*. And I have taken the liberty of translating from *Clarke's Introduction*, *Mair's Introduction* and *Bailey's Latin Exercises*; at which it is thought, no one will be offended, especially since it is right to profit by the labours of our predecessors. The whole is arranged, I trust, in such a plain and familiar way as to have
the

P R E F A C E.

the double advantage of pleasing and giving instruction.

To those acquainted with the utility of the practice of frequently correcting *ungrammatical sentences*, either in English or Latin, nothing need be said as an inducement to this study. Among the different ways of impressing the docile mind with the nature and beauty of SYNTAX, there is no one perhaps, more efficacious, than the thorough studying of an *Introduction*. As the examples cannot be corrected without understanding the rules, without seeing, in a sense, the influence and dependence that one word has on another, so this method must clearly have the advantage above all others.

THOSE, that may think proper to use the following work, as a classical book, are requested to spend some little time, in studying the nature of the rule, or rules, at the head of each chapter; and if they have my *Latin Grammar*, to turn to the example of illustration, which in the grammar, is given to each rule. After having done this, it is recommended that they begin with the first chapter in the *Introduction* and transpose the examples into good Latin, in a fair legible hand, or if it be more agreeable it may be read off, distinctly into good Latin. They may proceed in this manner through the first chapter; and when they come to the succeeding chapters, they are desired to read, or write, about half of each chapter, the first time of going over the book, and when they shall revise their lessons, they may finish the remain-
ing

P R E F A C E .

ing part of the chapters. By proceeding in this manner, they will firstly have the opportunity of learning and correcting that part of each chapter, which is the most plain and familiar : For, in arranging the examples, care has been had, to place at the head of each separate chapter, those examples that were esteemed the most intelligible.

To compose a *Latin Introduction*, without anticipating *posterior rules*, in any one instance, is a task extremely difficult ; and the performance next to impossible. Especial diligence should, however, be given to guard against the great inconvenience and impropriety of stating examples, the correction of which requires the knowledge of *posterior rules*. In consulting and using the following book, the attentive reader will find but a few instances of anticipation ; and those are so simple and plain as to cause no perplexity : For, it is taken for granted, that the scholar will obtain considerable information of the *Latin Language and Grammar* before he shall begin to exercise his genius in correcting the examples of bad grammar.

II. To prevent the necessity of sending to Europe for books that are wanted and used in American schools, is another reason that induced to hand *this* to a generous and learned public.

To the *Republican Sons of America* this reason will appear not only plausible, but conclusive. As' our independence

P R E F A C E.

Science is now fully established, as the arts and sciences are now flourishing among us, as men of literature and genius are constantly rising up and appearing on the glorious and extensive theatre of knowledge, so we ought not to be dependent on European pens, for the composition of books, that may be composed by our own sons. If, by a blinded partiality for British productions, we neglect our own, the *stimulus* to genius and exertion will be blunted, and our servility will too clearly appear.

ALTHOUGH the following collection has no originality, yet it is *the first* of the kind, that has been written and published in the *United States*. Others, it is possible, there may be; but none of them have come to my knowledge. And if, when it shall be perused, it may be esteemed by judicious characters, a little inferior to the *Transatlantic Introductions*, yet it is hoped, that the deficiencies will be freely pardoned, and that it will be recommended to the attention of students. And as it is of an American growth, it may, in a certain sense, claim this favour: For, to encourage and cherish our own sons, is more laudable than to bestow all our favours on foreigners. Should a generous partiality be shewn to our own publications, it would have an happy influence on the exertions of genius, it would much encourage the art of printing, and rapidly diffuse, in these western climes, that classical and useful knowledge, which would soon form characters equal in respectability to any in the old world.

THE

THE unexpected encouragement, which the author has received, from a generous public in the reception and approbation of his *former attempts* to promote grammatical knowledge, gives him reason to hope, that *this mite* will not be overlooked, in the vast treasure of learning, which is daily accumulating in our schools and colleges. To the learned and impartial he dedicates *this Introduction*; on their philanthropy and attachment to literature he is willing to depend, and he hopes, that he shall ever be stimulated with ambition to merit their notice:

THE AUTHOR;



A NEW

15 00 68



A NEW
 INTRODUCTION
 TO THE
 LATIN LANGUAGE.



CHAP. I.

The Nominative Case governs the Verb.
 The Verb agrees with the Nominative Case, in
 Number and Person.

An Adverb of *Time, Place* and *Quantity*, govern-
 ing the Genitive, may be used as a Nomina-
 tive to a Verb.

A Noun of Multitude Singular, may govern a
 Verb in the Plural Number.

I CALL, thou answerest, he
 teaches, we study, ye give,
 they receive.

I eat, thou sleepest, he mis-
 takes, we do breathe, ye do
 read, they hear.

B

I accused

EGO voco, tu respondes,
 ille doceo, ego studeo,
 do, accipio.

Edo, dormio, erro, spi-
 ro, lego, audio.

Accuse,

I accused, thou blamedst, he
praised, we condemned, ye
dismissed, they punished.

*Accuso, culpo, laudo,
condemno, dimitto, punio.*

I did love, thou didst halt,
he did learn, we did walk, ye
did ride, they did play.

*Amo, claudico, discō,
ambulo, equito, ludo.*

I have washed, thou hast
drunk, he hath laughed, we
have drawn, ye have fallen,
they have wept.

*Lavo, bibo, rideo, tra-
ho, cado, fleo.*

I saw, thou sworeſt, he
fought, we sinned, ye stood, they
remained.

*Video, juro, pugno,
pecco, fugio, maneo.*

I had commended, thou
hadst torn, he had tamed, we
had cut, ye had given, they
had stood.

*Laudo, lacero, domo,
seco, do, ſto.*

I shall read, thou shalt love,
he shall teach, we shall go, ye
shall commend, they shall dis-
praise.

*Lego, amo, doceo, eo,
laudo, vitupero.*

I shall have spoken, thou
shalt have seen, he shall have
torn, we shall have run, ye
shall have fought, they shall
have fought.

*Loquor, video, lacero,
curro, pugna, pecto.*

Join thou, let him separate,
let us instruct, exalt ye, let
them disgrace.

*Jungo, ſeparo, erudio,
exalto, vitupero.*

I may rub, thou mayest see,
he may tear, we may run, ye
may fight, they may fly.

*Frico, video, lacero,
curro, pugna, fugio.*

I might read, thou mightest
hear, he might say, we might
run, ye might stay, they might
write.

*Lego, audio, dico, cur-
ro, maneo, ſcribo.*

If I shall stand, if thou shalt
walk, if he shall sit, if we
shall have read, if ye shall have
played, if they shall have shout-
ed.

*Sto, ambulo, ſedeo, le-
go, ludo, clamo.*

I can

Rideo,

I can laugh, we can weep,
ye can sing, I drink, he is glad.

I am taught, thou art fought,
he is led, ye are despised, they
are loved, we are shunned.

I was accused, thou wast
blamed, he was praised, he was
condemned, we were dismiss-
ed, ye were punished.

I have been absolved, thou
hast been condemned, he has
been loved, we have been com-
mended, ye have been disprais-
ed, they have been rejected.

I had been seen, thou hadst
been tamed, he had been led,
we had been sent, ye had been
joined, they had been separated.

I shall be loved, thou shalt
be praised, he shall be beaten,
we shall be taught, ye shall be
punished, they shall be dismiss-
ed.

I may be driven, he may be
fought, we may be brought,
they might be loved, ye can
be taught, he must be whip-
ped, he learns.

No place is found.

Part of the men did fall.

In what place are we ?

In what nation is he ?

In what land are ye ?

The flock runs.

The multitude shouted.

The nation is conquered.

The troop flies.

Part return.

The cock crows, the geese
did cackle, the parrot had
spoken, the magpies have chat-
tered, the ravens had croaked,
the hens cluck.

*Rideo, fleo, cano, bibo,
gaudeo.*

*Doceo, quero, duco,
contemno, amo, vito.*

*Accuso, culpo, laudo,
condemno, dimitto, pu-
nio.*

*Absolvo, damno, amo,
laudo, vitupero, repudio.*

*Video, domo, duco,
mitto, jungo, separo.*

*Amo, laudo, cado, do-
ceo, punio, dimitto.*

*Ago, quero, adduco,
amo, doceo, vaspulo, disco.*

Nusquam locus invenio.

Partim vir cado.

Ubi locus sum ?

Ubi gens existo ?

Ubi terra sum ?

Grex curro.

Multitudo clamo.

Natio vinco.

Turma fugio.

Pars redeo.

*Gallus canto, anser
glocito, psittachus loquor,
pica garrio, corvus cro-
cito, gallina pipo.*

Men

Home

Men have shouted, horses will stumble, the asses did bray, women will prate, wives will scold, the boys were beaten.

Virtue is praised, vice was shunned, honor was sought, riches were acquired, the boys will learn, let books be brought, Peter affirms, who will deny? the battle was joined, the arrows fly, the horses are taken.

Homo clamo, equus titabo, asinus rudo, mulier garrigo, uxor jurgo, puer cado.

Virtus laudo, vitium vito, honos quero, divitiæ paro, puer disco, asifero liber, Petrus affirmo, quis nego? prælium committo, sagitta volo, equus capio.

CHAP. II.

The Adjective, Pronoun and Participle agree with their Nouns, in Number, Case and Gender.

THE good boy learns, the naughty boys play, the swift horses conquer, the slow horse is overcome.

Proud men do fall, but humble men shall be exalted; high towers may fall, whilst low cottages may stand.

The fearful hares fled, nimble dogs followed, beautiful women are loved, weary travellers sit.

Our preceptor comes, let us read, the idle boy will be beaten, my books are torn, thy brothers were commended.

This was well done; let us despise earthly things, and contemplate heavenly things; death devours all things; the first man was created.

BONUS puer disco, malus puer ludo, celer equus vinco, tardus equus vinco.

Superbus homo cado, sed modestus homo proveho, altus turris cado, dum humilis casa sto.

Timidus lepus fugio, velox canis sequor, formosus mulier amo, fessus viator sedeo.

Noster præceptor venio, lego, ignavus puer cado, meus liber lacero, tuus frater laudo.

Hic bene facio; contemno humanus, et specto caelestis; mors devoro omnis; primus homo creo.

My

Præceptor

My just master corrects his own son offending; the wise seek wisdom, but the fool despiseth understanding; the industrious are praised, but the slothful are punished.

Præceptor meus justus corrigo filius suus delinquo; sapiens quæro sapientia, sed stultus contemno intelligentia; sedulus laudo, sed ignavus punio.

CHAP. III.

Active and Deponent Verbs, in general, govern an Accusative of the object, on which an action terminates.

The Accusative Case, by Synecdoche, is put after some Neuter Verbs.

A DILIGENT master hear-eth lessons; careless boys tear their best books; love the greatest and best God; embrace Christ.

The old Romans conquered all nations; Annibal harrassed the Romans long, but was conquered at last.

Virtue procures and preserves friendship, but vice produceth hatred and quarrels.

Virtue alone affords true honour; humble modesty graces a bashful maid; terrible death will invade impious sinners; we know nothing rightly, till the divine spirit shall have enlightened our dark understandings.

Corydon is in love with Alexis; he boasts of his planted trees and vineyards; it is the

B 2

voice

PRÆCEPTOR *sedulus audio lectio; puer remissus lacero liber suus bonus; amo Deus bonus et magnus; amplector Christus.*

Vetus Romanus vinco omnis gens; Annibal exagito diu Romanus, sed tandem vinco.

Virtus concilio et conservo amicitia, sed vitium pario odium et inimicitia.

Virtus solus præbeo honor verus; modestia submissus orno virgo verticundus; mors dirus invado peccator impius; percipio nihil recte, donec spiritus ille divinus illuminino mens noster cæcus.

Corydon ardeo Alexis; crepo sulcus et vinetum; vox homo sono; oleo hircus;

voice of a man ; he smells like a goat ; to dance like a Cyclops ; he breathes like a god ; he has a red face ; his teeth are white ; his hair is red.

Drunkards smell of wine, a proud man of perfumes ; angry men breathe revenge against their enemies, and thirst after the destruction of those that oppose and injure them.

They that serve the devil, serve an hard service ; boys live a troublesome life at school, they think.

cus ; salto Cyclops ; spiro deus, ille rubeo facies ; candro dens ; ille capillus rubeo.

Bibo oleo vinum, superbus odoramentum ; iracundus spiro ultio in inimicus suus, et sitio pernicies ille, qui oppono et noceo sui.

Qui servio diabolus, servio servitus durus ; puer vivo vita molestus in schola, cogito.

CHAP. IV.

Verbs N uter, as *sum, forem, fio, existo*, passive Verbs of naming, as *appellor*, &c. and these passive Verbs *agnoscor*, &c. and these Verbs of gesture, *cubo*, &c. govern the Nominative after them.

The Infinitives of these Verbs, govern the same Case after them, that goes before them.

A Verb between two Nominatives of different Numbers may agree with either.

MY brother is a good boy, because he reads his book ; but thou art a bad boy, because thou neglectest thy lesson.

Varro was esteemed a learned man, Cicero was accounted eloquent, Aristides was called just, Pompey was named great.

MEUS frater sum bonus puer, quia lego suus liber ; sed tu sum malus puer, quia negligenter lectio.

Varro existimo doctus vir, Cicero habeo disertus, Aristides dico justus, Pompeius nomine magnus.

Hypocrites

Simulator

Hypocrites pray loud and long ; I, who came first, am praised ; but thou, who always comest last, loolest thine honour ; the lion is accounted a most generous and placable beast.

Virtue is called vice, and vice is often called virtue, but yet virtue is not vice, nor is vice virtue.

She walks a queen ; the soldiers sleep secure ; man walketh upright ; the boy sits porter ; the servants walk on foot ; the master stays alone ; the soldiers come up in arms.

Loquacity makes a prattler to be accounted a fool ; but silence causes a man to be accounted wise ; bridle thy tongue, if thou wilt seem wise.

Peter desires to be a learned man ; thou lovest to be called father ; he would have himself made general ; we see, that the old man walks straight.

Empedocles affected to be esteemed an immortal god ; if thou desirest to be a good man, practise charity and other virtues.

It is not given to all to be noble and opulent ; but it is permitted to all to be good, if they will.

The portion was twenty talents ; bones are made a stone ; the falling out of lovers is the renewal of love ; blood were tears.

Simulator oro sonorus et longus ; ego, qui venio primus, laudo ; sed tu, qui semper venio ultimus, perdo honor tuus ; leo habeo generosus et placabilis animal.

Virtus voco vitium, et vitium saepe appello virtus, sed tamen virtus non sum vitium, nec vitium sum virtus.

Ille incedo regina ; miles dormio securus ; homo incedo erectus, puer sedeo janitor ; famulus incedo pes ; herus maneo solus ; miles venio armatus.

Loquacitas facio garulus existimo stultus ; sed silentium facio homo habeo sapiens ; cohideo lingua tuus, si volo video sapiens.

Petrus cupio sum vir doctus ; tu amo dico pater ; volo sui creco dux ; video, senex incedo rectus.

Empedocles cupio habeo immortalis deus ; si tu volo sum bonus vir, colo charitas aliisque virtus.

Non do omnis sum nobilis et opulentus ; sed licet omnis sum bonus, si volo.

Dos sum decem talentum ; os fio lapis ; amans ira amor redintegratio sum ; sanguis sum lacryma.

CHAP.

C H A P. V.

The Relative agrees with its Antecedent, in Number, Gender and Person.

When there is no Nominative between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative is the Nominative.

When a Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative is governed by the Verb, or some other word in the Sentence, on which it depends.

A Member of a Sentence is often the Antecedent to a Relative.

THE king is honoured, who loveth his subjects; the woman is loved, who hath a fair face.

The rebellious scholar, that neglects his learning, vexes his master indeed, but destroyeth himself.

The rewards, that are promised, shall be given; if the works, that are required, be done.

The wicked, that fear not God now, will condemn their own folly hereafter.

God, who governs the world, is a spirit, whom no man hath seen.

Our country includes all our friends and relations; he, therefore, that loves not his country, is not a man, but a brute.

Cato

REX ille honoro, qui amo subditus suus; mulier amo, qui habeo facies pulcher.

Discipulus iste contumax, qui negligo literæ, vexo magister quidem, sed perdo sui ipse.

Præmium, qui promitto, do; si opus, qui postulo, fio.

Scelestus, qui non timeo Deus nunc, damno stultitia suus posthac.

Deus, qui gubernamundus, sum spiritus, qui nemo video.

Noster patria complector omnis amicus noster et cognatus; qui igitur non amo patria, non sum vir, sed bellua.

Cato

Cato was a wise and valiant man; he loved the commonwealth and all those, that loved and defended it.

The covetous man, who always wants, cannot be rich.

He is not rich whose money is increased, and whose flocks are many; but he, whose mind is quiet and content.

He is a good boy, whom glory encourageth and commendation delighteth; he will become an excellent man.

Men often pursue pleasure, which is a pernicious thing; but do you seek after true glory, which is a commendable thing.

Thou commonly truantest much and art idle, which are pernicious things.

I hate thy manners, who dost not reverence superiors.

I found thy lost book, who art a careless boy.

Thou and thy brother shall visit our country house, who live pleasantly near a river.

My brother and I who came first, were admitted.

I found thy paper, ruler, and penknife, which had been lost.

Thou and I, who spoiled the pens and paper, that we bought, have provoked our master, who loves thrifty boys, that keep their things carefully and spoil nothing.

What

Cato sum sapiens et fortis vir; amo respublica et omnis is, qui amo et defendo is.

Avarus, qui semper egeo, non possum sum dives.

Ille non sum dives qui pecunia augeo, et qui grex sum multus; sed ille qui animus sum quietus et tranquillus.

Sum bonus puer, qui gloria exoritur et laus delecto; sicut egregius vir.

Homo saepe sector voluptas, qui sum perniciosus; sed tu quaero verus gloria, qui sum laudabilis.

Saepe multum cesso, et sum ignavus, qui sum perniciosus.

Odio habeo mos tuus, qui non revereor superior.

Invenio liber tuus amissus, qui sum puer negligens.

Tu et frater viso suburbanum noster, qui habito amane prope amnis.

Frater meus et ego qui venio primus, admitto.

Invenio charta tuus, norma, et scalpellum, qua amitto.

Tu et ego, qui corrumpto penna et charta, qui emo, irrito magister noster, qui diligo puer frugi, qui servo suus diligenter, et corrumpto nihil.

Qui

What troubles your mind ?
 What a country have I seen ?
 What have you done ? If you
 knew what a great present we
 have received.

*Qui molesto animus
 tuus ? Qualis regio ego
 video ? Quid facio ? se
 scio quantus munus ego
 accipio.*

C H A P. VI.

Two or more Nouns Singular, may have a Verb, Adjective and Pronoun, in the Plural, to agree with them. The Participle is included in this rule : And if they be of different Genders, the Verb, Adjective, Pronoun and Participle will agree with the most worthy.*

YOU and your father, who live temperately, will surely live long.

Cyrus and Alexander, who subdued Asia, are renowned generals.

Brutus and Arunskilled one another; yet the Romans departed victorious.

Cato and Cicero were wise and learned; they loved their country, and all those who loved and defended it.

Hamilcar, Annibal and Asdrubal who carried on a war against the Romans, were very skilful generals.

Homer, Virgil and Horace are justly esteemed most excellent poets.

Alexander and Julius Cæsar were, very great commanders,

TU et pater tuus, qui vivo temperate, certe diu vivo.

Cyrus et Alexander, qui domo Asia, sum inclutus dux.

Brutus et Aruns occidit sui invicem; tamen Romanus recedo victor.

Cato et Cicero sum sapiens et doctus; amo patria, et omnis is qui amo et defendo is.

Hamilcar, Annibal et Asdrubal qui gero bellum adversus Romanus, sum peritus dux.

Homerus, Virgilius et Horatius merito existimo bonus poeta.

Alexander et Julius Cæsar sum præstans dux, qui

* See Appendix, Chap. V. Rem. 4.

era, the former of whom conquered Asia, but the latter subdued the Gauls.

I and my brother read Terence ; thou and thy brother are elder than we are, and read Corderus.

On a sudden, consternation and sorrow overspread the city ; but the night and the plunder retarded the enemy.

My father and mother were very pious ; I will implore the divine assistance, and follow their good examples.

Honour, praise and glory are valued and sought after, by good men ; but laws, faith and the gods themselves, are trampled upon, by the wicked.

qui ille domo Asia, at hic subigo Gallus.

Ego et meus frater lego Terentius ; tu et tuus frater sum natu major quam ego sum, et lego Corderius.

Repente, metus et mæror invado civitas ; sed nox et præda remoror hostis.

Meus pater et mater sum valde pius, imploro divinus opis, et sequor is bonus exemplum.

Honos, laus et decus sum æstimatus et quæsitus, a bonus vir ; sed jus, fides et deus ipse, sum calcatus, ab improbus.

C H A P. VII.

A Verb, in the Infinitive Mode, may do the office of a Nominative case to a Verb.

A member of a sentence may do the office of a Nominative case to a Verb.

TO see the shining sun is a most pleasant thing.

To kill innocent infants is a most cruel thing.

To play moderately, to sleep little, to learn much, and rise early are most excellent things.

To despise the wicked and love the good is commendable.

VIDEO sol splendens, jucundum sum.

Occido infans innocuus sum crudelis.

Modice ludo, parum dormio, multum discō, diluculo surgo sum præstantans.

Contemno scelestus, et diligo bonus, sum laudabilis.

To

Fugio

To fly when our country is invaded, is base ; let us therefore fight valiantly, and die honourably.

To hold one's peace is often safe ; be silent, therefore, if thou art wise, and do not talk much.

To see is pleasant, but to discover truth is more pleasant ; let us, therefore seek it most diligently.

To know one's self is the greatest wisdom ; which as it is a very hard thing, so it is very useful.

Julius Cæsar conquered Gaul, which was a very difficult thing ; because the old Gauls were very brave.

To cultivate virtue and seek after true glory are glorious things ; but to love vice and pursue after vain glory are dishonourable things.

My brother reads good books and studies hard, which are commendable ; and therefore, the Master loves and praises him.

*Fugio cum patria nos-
ter oppugno, sum turpis ;
pugno igitur strenue po-
tius, et morior honeste.*

*Taceo sum sæpe tutus ;
sum igitur taciturnus, sed
sapio, nec loquor multus.*

*Video sum jucundus,
sed invenio veritas sum
jucundus ; quæro is ig-
itur diligenter.*

*Nosco sui ipse sum
magnus sapientia ; qui ut
sum difficilis, ita sum
utilis.*

*Julius Cæsar subiga
Gallia, qui sum difficilis ;
quia vetus Gallus sum
fortis.*

*Virtus colo et quæro
verus gloria sum glorio-
sus ; sed amo vitium et
sector inanis gloria sum
turpis.*

*Meus frater lego bonus
liber, et studeo diligenter,
qui sum laudandus ; ac
proinde præceptor amo et
laudo is.*

C H A P. VIII.

Verbs compounded with Prepositions, govern the Case of their Prepositions, when their force falls on the casual Word.

Verbs compounded with *a*, *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *e*, *ex* and *in*, often admit a similar Preposition before the casual Noun.

Nouns and Pronouns are often governed by Prepositions understood.

These thirty two Prepositions govern the Accusative; *ad*, *adversus*, *adversum*, *ante*, *apud*, *circa*, *circum*, *circiter*, *cis*, *extra*, *contra*, *erga*, *extra*, *infra*, *inter*, *intra*, *juxta*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *pone*, *post*, *præter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *secus*, *supra*, *trans*, *ultra*, *versus*, *usque* and *usque ad*.

HE went out of the enclosure. I went out of the harbour. They break from the gates. They shove the ships from the rocks.

Let us go to school. He speaks to his brother. He carried the army over the river. He departed from the city. They come up to the walls. He is carried round the fort. They engage in battle.

When on the highest mountain, we see Polyphemus himself.

In the midst of a wood, his mother presents herself.

EXEO septim. Portus egredior. Erumpo portam. Detrudo navis scopulus.

Adeo schola. Adloquor frater. Exercitus suavius transduco. Decedo urbs. Subeo murus. Circumueho ars. Ineo prelium.

Superus cum mons, video Polyphemus ipse.

Mater obuius sui in medio sylva fero.

C

In

Quæ

In which place, the Carthaginians first dug up the sign, that royal Juno had shewn.

For what they came.

Julius Cæsar was a very valiant commander ; but thro' pride and lust of ruling, he turned his arms against his own country, and so ruined it and himself.

Sicily lies beneath Italy ; it is a pleasant and fruitful island, the Carthaginians subdued it, and held it, until the Romans forced them to leave it.

Cato was a wise and good man, according to my opinion.

After they came to a conference, peace was concluded between them.

The swallows come before summer ; they fly thro' the air.

The general drew up his army on this side the Alps, no body ever fought more valiantly against an enemy.

He takes the towns about Capua, he rewards the soldiers according to their bravery.

The moon drives her chariot beneath the sun, the heaven is stretched out above the clouds.

The pilot is with the ship. The heifer wanders about the fields. The army encamps about the city. Charity ought to be exercised towards our neighbours.

Qui locus, Pæni præmum effodio signum qui regius Juno monstro.

Qui venio.

Julius Cæsar sum dux fortis ; sed per superbia et regnandus libido, verto arma adversus patria, atque ita perdo is et sui ipse.

Sicilia positus sum infra Italia, sum insula amœnus et fertilis, Carthaginienfis subigo, et teneo, donec Romanus cogo is relinquo is.

Cato sum sapiens et bonus vir, secundum meus opinio.

Postquam venio ad colloquium, pax ordine inter is.

Hirundo venio ante æstas ; valito per aura.

Dux instruo acies cis Alpes, nemo unquam pugno fortiter contra hostis.

Occupo urbs circa Capua, remuneror miles secundum virtus.

Luna ago currus infra sol, talum porrigo supra nubes.

Vector sum apud navis.

Juvenca vagor circa ager. Exercitus castrametor circum urbs. Charitas debeo exerceo erga proximus.

CHAP.

C H A P. IX.

These thirteen Prepositions govern the Ablative ; *a, ab, abs, absque, coram, cum, de, e, ex, palam, præ, pro, sine.*

Tenus may govern a Noun, in the Genitive, or Ablative plural. If the noun be singular, it is put in the Ablative only.

In, sub, subter and *super*, implying *Motion to a Place, or Thing*, govern the Accusative.

If *Settlement, Rest, or Motion* in a place be expressed, then *in, sub, subter* and *super*, govern either the Accusative, or Ablative.

Clam governs the Accusative, or Ablative indifferently.

DRUNKARDS ramble from one alehouse to another. A maid, without modesty, is a furious mare without a bridle. The advocate pleaded my cause before that judge.

The waters covered him up to the eyes. He sheathed his sword up to the hilt. The brook was up to the knees. Up to the waist. Up to the ears. Up to the shoulders.

The boy jumps under the water. The wicked shall be turned into hell. My brother is a naughty boy ; for he ran away from school without the master's knowledge.

Showers are poured down into the vallies, whilst snow falls upon the hills.

BIBO vagor a caupona hic ad alius. *Virgo absque modestia sum (qua furiosus absque frenum. Advocatus ago causa meus coram iudex ille.*

Aqua teger ille oculus. tenuis. Abdo ensis capulus tenuis. Torrens exto. genu tenuis. Pubes tenuis. Auris tenuis. Humerus tenuis.

Puer salto sub aqua. Impius detrudo in gehenna. Frater meus scelestus sum ; nam aufugio e schola clam preceptor.

Imber fundo in vallibus. dum nix cado super collis.

The

Pastor

The shepherds came under the mountains with their flocks ; they drove them into the folds under the ground.

Whilst Peter was sitting in the parlour, the boys were playing in the porch, the girls were dancing under a tree.

The soldiers sat down upon the grass, nigh the shore, where they dined in presence of their general.

Phaëton, for fear, fell from heaven into the Po, in Italy ; his sisters bewailed his death, till they were all changed into poplar trees.

Whilst the war is carried on in Numidia against Jugurtha, the Romans were defeated by the Gauls, nigh the Rhone.

Towards the evening, the nobility fled out of the city, passed over into Greece, levied war in Epire against Cæsar.

Cæsar is sent into Germany, he marches with his army beyond the Rhine, lays waste the country, returns with glory to winter quarters.

The shepherd passes by the village, goes to the city, where he stays a long time ; he is ordered to depart from the town, to return to his flocks ; but he would not desist from his purpose.

The Giants, who assaulted heaven, were buried under vast mountains, as the old poets say ; they endeavour to rise

*Pastor venio sub montes
cum grex ; ago is in sep-
tum subter terra.*

*Dum Petrus sedeo in
canaculum, puer colludo
in vestibulum, puella sal-
to sub arbor.*

*Miles discumbo super
gramen, subter littus, ubi
prandeo coram dux.*

*Phaëton, præ timor, ca-
do de cælum in Padus,
in Italia ; soror lugeo
mors, donec omnis nuto
in populus.*

*Dum bellum gero in
Numidia contra Jugur-
tha. Romanus vinco. a
Gallus juxta Rhodanus.*

*Sub vesperus, nobilitas
fugio ex urbs, transco in
Græcia, paro bellum. a-
pud Epirus contra Cæ-
sar.*

*Cæsar mitto in Germa-
nia, pergo cum exercitus
ultra Rheus, vasto ager,
revertor cum gloria in
hybrna.*

*Pastor prætereo villa,
adeo urbs, ubi diu com-
moror ; jubeo decedo op-
pidum, redeo ad grex ; et
nolo abistere inceptum.*

*Gigas, qui oppugnavit
cælum, sepelio sub ingens
mons, ut vetus poeta dico ;
conor surgo subinde, qui
efficit*

rise now and then, which causes the earthquakes, as the same wise authors affirm.

efficio terra motus, ut idem sapiens auctor affirmo.

C H A P. X.

One Verb may govern another in the Infinitive.

Nouns may govern Verbs in the Infinitive.

Adjectives may elegantly put Verbs in the Infinitive.

A Verb may be used in the Infinitive Mode independent.

Participles govern Verbs in the Infinitive.

A Noun, or Pronoun, in the Accusative absolute, governs a Verb in the Infinitive.

I DESIRE to learn. Thou art glad to be taught. Mercury is said to have invented the harp.

I desire to know. Thou art afraid to tell. He despises to be taught. We are forbidden to prate. Ye ought to study. They are ordered to write.

I will take care to avoid intemperance. Thou oughtest to seek wisdom. He endeavours to perform his promise. We have resolved to hear the lesson. Ye design to make verses. They seem to have done an injury. Learn thou to lay aside pride. Money cannot change nature. A soldier always rejoices to recount his dangers. It

CUPIO disco. Gaudeo doceo. Mercurius discor invenio lyra.

Cupio scio. Vereor dico. Sperno doceo. Veta garrus. Debeo studeo. Jubeo scribo.

Curo vito intemperantia. Debeo expeto sapientia. Conor praesto promissum. Statuo audio pralectio. Designo compono versus. Video facio injuria. Disco depono supercilium. Pecunia nescio muta natura. Miles semper gaudeo memoro periculum.

Sum.

It is time to depart. There was a desire to know such great misfortunes. He took this occasion to write. I gave a sign to come to the god.

Worthy to be read. Desiring to die. Trees that will not grow. Not knowing to suffer poverty. Desirous to begin the battle. Courageous to endure all things. Fearing to be polluted.

A dutiful son dares not disobey his parents. Who can compare any thing with learning? Violence cannot despoil us of it.

I wonder that your brother does not write to me; I cannot believe that he is well.

Silius boasted, that his soldiers had persisted in obedience; when others had lapsed into sedition.

When Cæsar heard that the Helvetii were in arms, and that they designed to make their way through his province, he made haste to be gone from Rome, and came very speedily to Geneva.

The ambassadors complained, that they were slighted, and took it ill that they were ordered to depart from the city; but the king declared that he would reckon them for enemies, unless they went off at the day appointed.

Historians tell, that Philip was slain by a young man, as he was going to the publick games, and many believed that
Alexander

Suum tempus loqui. Sicut amor cognosco tantus magnus casus. Apprehendo occasio scribo. Signum de venio deus.

Dignus lego. Cupidus morior. Arbor indocilis pascor. Indocilis pauperes patior. Audus committo pugna. Audax omnia perpetior. Metuens polluo.

Filius pius non audeo repugno parens suus. Quis possum comparo aliquid doctrina? Violentia non possum spoliis ego is.

Miror tuus frater non scribo ad ego; non possum credo is valdo.

Silius jactans suus miles duro in obsequium, cum alius pro labor ad seditione.

Cum Cæsar audio Helvetii sum in arma, et is statuo facio iter per provincia suus, maturo proficior a Roma, et venio celeriter ad Geneva.

Legatus queror sub negligo, et acre fero sui jubeo discedo ab urbs; at rex denuncio sui habeo is pro hostis, nisi proficiscor ad dies statutus.

Historicus narro, Philippus obrunco ab adolescens, cum eo ad ludus publicus, et multus credo Alexander

Alexander had encouraged him to so great a crime. The young man was called Pausanias.

The old Persians believed, that the sun was God.

When Alexander the great, after his evening's debauch, had called to mind, that he himself had killed his dear friend Clitus, he would have stabbed himself; but some of his soldiers knowing, that he designed to kill himself, prevented him.

Artaxerxes, the Persian king, sent ambassadors into Greece, by whom he ordered all people to depart from arms, declaring, that he should reckon him for an enemy that did otherwise.

Alexander impellit e ad tantum facinus. Adolescentem vero Pausanias.

Vetus Persa credo fuisse Deum.

Cum Alexander ille magnus, post poculum nocturnum suum, revocet in animus sui trucidat Clitus amicus suus charus, volens jugulum sui; sed aliquis ex militibus suis, statim tuum occidit sui, impeditur ille.

Artaxerxes, rex Persarum, mitto legatos in Græciam, per qui jubet omnes discedo ab armis, denuncians sui habeo pro hostis, qui facio aliter.

CHAPTER XL.

Two Nouns, in conjunction, and implying Property, will have the latter in the Genitive.

Several Nouns together, meaning the same thing, agree in the same case, by apposition. If an Adjective of Praise, or Dispraise, be joined to the latter Noun, it may be either in the Genitive, or Ablative Case.

THE sight of a fair picture delights the eye. The beauty of a handsome woman is pleasing. The cares of this world.

CONSPECTUS imago pulcher delecto oculo. Pulchritudo femina formosus placet. Cura mundus

32 A NEW INTRODUCTION TO

world have blinded the eyes of men.

The deceitfulness of riches ensnare the thoughts of greedy sinners. The soul of a righteous man will abhor the base love of cursed pleasures and lusts. The report of the great dowery of an unmarried virgin is often the sound of a great lie.

The father's prodigality will be the son's shame and beggary. The stout soldier's sword has been the proud enemy's ruin.

The valiant son of Philip coveted the dominion of the whole world.

The fear of God, contempt of the world, and steadfast hope of eternal life, make quietness of mind, which is the greatest happiness of man.

The ditchers cleanse our town ditch. The slave leaped over the city wall and escaped. School boys love the school chimney, when their limbs are cold.

Let us drink plentifully out of this cup of gold. We have been gathering mountain fruits. My father's house and my brother's garden are joining.

A good prince is a father to his country. Loyal subjects are the strongest walls to royalty.

Bucephalus, the horse of Alexander, would suffer no rider,

duc hic occato meus homo.

Fraus divitiæ illaqueo cogitatio peccator avidus. Anima pius abominor amor vilis voluptas dirus et cupido. Fama dos magnus virgo inuuptus sum sæpe sonus mendacium grandis.

Prodigalitas pater sum pudor et egestas filius. Gladius miles magnanimus sum exilium hostis superbus.

Filius ille magnanimus Philippus cupio dominium mundus totus.

Timor Deus, contemptus mundus, et spes firmus vita æternus, concilio quies animus, qui sum felicitas maximus homo.

Fossor mundo fossa oppidum noster. Verna transilio murus urbs et aufugio. Discipulus amo caminus schola, cum membrum suus sum frigidus.

Astatim bibo ex poculum hic aureus. Colligo fructus montanus. Domus paternus et hortus fraternus sum propinquus.

Princeps bonus sum pater patria suus. Subditus pius sum murus fortis majestas regius.

Bucephalus, equus Alexander, volo patior fessor nubus

rider, but his master. Death, the enemy of nature, is the friend of good men, whom it leadeth into eternal happiness.

They had come to Diana's. Who preached, to day, at St. Giles's? We shall lodge, at the Swan, near St. Andrew's.

I love a boy of an excellent wit and good memory. The servant of a stubborn spirit, that does not obey his master's commands, shall be beaten.

Happy is our nation, that hath a king of great clemency. That master hath easy work, that teacheth boys of flexible minds and ingenious dispositions.

Ninus enlarged his empire as far as the borders of Lydia. Many had rather suffer the loss of life, than a good name. Forgetfulness is the companion of drunkenness. The government of nations was at first in kings.

Virtue removes the fear of death. Nature's laws cannot be changed. The souls of men are immortal; but their bodies return to dust.

Thy brother is a boy of a fine disposition, of the strictest virtue, of a graceful mein, and handsome person. Twice seven nymphs of an excellent body.

The power of honesty is so great, that we love it even in an enemy. Marcellus engaged:

nullus nisi dominus suus. Mors, inimicus natura, sum amicus. bonus, qui duca ad felicitas aternus.

Ventum sum ad Diana. Quis concionor hodie apud Egidius Sanctus? Diversor ad Cygnus, prope sanctus Andreas.

Amo puer ingenium bonus et memoria felix. Serous animus contumax, qui non obsequo jussu herilis, vapulo.

Natio noster sum felix qui habeo rex clementia summus. Præceptor ille habeo opus facilis, qui doceo puer animus flexibilis et ingenium acutus.

Ninus profero imperium usque ad fines Lydia. Multus malo facio jacturo vita quam fama. Oblivio sum comes ebrietas. Imperium gens sum primum penes rex.

Virtus tollo terrorem mors. Natura lex non possunt muta. Animus homo sum immortalis; sed corpora is in pulvis redeo.

Frater tuus sum puer probus indolis, superus virtus, bonus facies, et figura venustus. Bis septem prestans corpus nymphæ.

Vis honestus sum tantus, et diligo is etiam hostis. Marcellus dimico cum

gaged with a small body of horse, and slew Viroadomarus, king of the Gauls.

Lampedo, the Lacedemonian, is said to have been the only woman, in any age, who was a king's daughter, a king's wife and a king's mother.

A kindness does not consist in that which is done or given, but in the intention of the doer and giver.

Numerianus, Carus's son, a young man of an extraordinary genius, was taken off by a plot among the Persians.

Tiberius, the Roman emperor, was a man of a large and strong body, of a fair complexion and a graceful aspect.

Cicero was a man of a mild disposition and polite eloquence.

God, who knoweth man's heart, will punish the wicked, that transgress his commands.

Cataline was a man of great vigour, both of mind and body; but of a wicked and perverse disposition.

Julius Cæsar, the first Roman emperor, was an excellent orator.

The sheep, innocent creatures, are often torn and devoured by the furious wild beasts, the wolves.

Whilst these things are doing at the Hellespont, Perdicas is slain at the river Nile, by Seleucus and Antigonus.

cum parvus manus equus, et occido Viroadomarus, rex Gallus.

Lampedo, Lacedæmoniæ, dico sum unicus fæmina in omni ævum, qui sum rex filia, rex uxor et rex mater.

Beneficium non consistit in is qui fæo aut do, sed in animus faciens aut dans.

Numerianus, Carus filius, adolescens egregius indoles, occido per insidiam apud Persæ.

Tiberius, Romanus imperator, sum vir amplus et robustus corpus, candidus color et honestus facies.

Cicero sum vir mitis ingenium, et comptus facunda.

Deus, qui nosco cor homo, punio scelestus, qui violo is præceptum.

Catalina sum vir magnus vis, et animus et corpus; sed malus pravusque ingenium.

Julius Cæsar, primus Romanus imperator, sum eximius orator.

Ovis, innoxius animal, sæpe dilacero et devoro a rabidus, rapax fera lupus.

Dum hic gero apud Hellespontus, Perdicas interficio apud flumen Nilus, a Seleucus et Antigonus.

They

Are

They say, that Marcus Tullius Cicero, the orator, was a very great philosopher; he sent his son Marcus to the city Athens to attend Cratippus, a very famous teacher, and to be educated by him.

Aio, Marcus Tullius Cicero, orator, sum magnus philosophus; mitto filium Marcus ad urbs Athenæ, ut audio Cratippus, celebris doctor, et instituo ab is.

C H A P. XII.

Nouns, that are Compounded with *con*, govern the Dative.

Two Nouns, in Conjunction, and the latter expressing some *Property*, or *Manner*, or *Reason*, belonging to the former, the latter must be in the Ablative.

The Nouns, *opus* and *usus*, signifying *Need*, govern the Ablative, and sometimes the Genitive, and always a Dative of the *Person* expressed, or understood.

A Noun, derived from a Verb, often governs a following Verb, in the same case, as the Verb from which it is derived, would govern.

ALTHOUGH I have twice learned the whole grammar, yet I have need of daily reading.

Thou art ignorant, and hast need of instruction; but thou dost not regard, thou hast therefore need of the rod.

Give pardon easily, because thou hast need of pardon thyself.

Few seek after those things of which they have most need.

Flavius

QUAMVIS *his disco grammatica totus, tamen habeo opus lectio quotidianus.*

Sum ignarus, et habeo opus documentum; sed negligo, qua propter habeo virga opus.

Do venia facile, quoniam opus sum tu ipse venia

Paucus quero is qui maxime opus sum ille.

Flavius

Flavius came to the Roman general, and tells him, that he had entered upon a great design, to finish which there would be occasion for Gracchus's assistance.

Against the Trojans, I do not need the arms of Vulcan, nor a thousand ships.

Now there is need of strength, now of nimble hands, now of all the magisterial art. Flung delays away.

Whom the Republic gave companions with you and assistants of the public business.

Thou hadst me the last companion with thy counsels.

I yield, nor will I refuse to go a companion with you. Little Iulus shall be a Companion with me. With whom faithful Achates shall go a companion.

With them Laodomia goes a companion. With one his son Pallas, with the other Achates came a companion.

My father sent me a companion with him. The martial Romulus shall associate with his grandfire.

Cæsar, a Trojan by nation. By origin, Æneas was the son of Anchises.

He was making his return home. He made a delivery to another,

Flavius Romanus imperator venio, res sui aio magnus inchoo, qui perficio ipse Gracchus opera opus sum.

Non arma Vulcanus egeo, non mille carina sum opus in Teucris.

Nunc vis usus, nunc manus rapidus, omnis nunc ars magistra. Præcipito mora.

Qui tu comes et adiutor negotium publicus do ipse respublica.

Ego superus habeo comes consilium tuus.

Cedo, nec tu comes eo recuse. Ego parvus Iulus sum comes. Qui fidus Achates eo comes.

Hic Laodomia eo comes. Filius hic Pallas, illis comes eo Achates.

Ille ego comes pater mitto. Avus comes sui mavortius addo Romulus.

Cæsar, Trojanus natio. Ortus, Æneas sum filius Anchises.

Ille facio reditio domus. Alter facio traditio.

C H A P. XIII.

Adjectives, that express an *Affection of the Mind* govern the Genitive.

An Adjective, or Pronoun, put in the Neuter Gender Absolute, may govern a Genitive.

Participial Adjectives, ending in *ans, ens, as* and *us*, govern the Genitive.

THOSE men, that are desirous of honour, ought to be studious of learning and good manners.

He, who is always mindful of the master's commands, is not fearful of punishment.

Thou art ignorant of natural things, rude of letters, and uncertain of the path of virtue.

The richest man, careless of his affairs, is reduced to poverty; but a poor man, careful of his, obtaineth riches.

He, that is of a bold heart frightens his enemy and escapeth danger; and he, that is of a daring temper, is a driver away of cowards.

Most men are sagacious in their own profit. Fools are tenacious enough of their own intentions, but not so capable of admonition. Gluttony is apt to consume an estate.

QUI sum cupidus honor, debeo sum studiosus literæ et mos bonus.

Qui semper sum memor iussu præceptor, non sum timidus pœna.

Sum ignarus res naturalis, rudis literæ, et incertus callis virtus.

Dives, improvidus res suus, redigo ad inopiam; sed pauper, providus res suus, obtineo opis.

Qui, sum audax animus, terreo inimicus suus, et evado periculum; et qui sum audax ingenium, sum fugax pusillanimus.

Plerusque sum sagax utilitas suus. Stultus sum satis tenax propositum suus, sed non adeo capax admonitio. Gula sum edax facultates.

D

Much

Multus

Much labour brings more gains. How much sweat, so much sweetness. He that hath a good stomach, desires little sauce.

The soldiers seem to move this way ; a great deal of silver glitters on their arms ; what is the meaning ? What is the matter ?

After the battle much gold and other riches were found in the camp of the Persians.

As much money as any one has in his chest, so much credit has he ; and he, that has little money, has little credit.

What news is there in the city about Nero ? A little before his death, he leaned down upon a bed, and drank some warm water.

After I had gone away from you, I wrote this little epistle, and I took care to avoid the words, that might occasion any obscurity.

They have not so much need of precept as example. The boys are now arrived at that age, that they ought to behave wisely. What need is there of words ?

Now there will be need of your assistance ; for, in a capital affair, a judge ought to act cautiously ; and there is need of great evidence.

Courage was the cause of the victory ; wherefore such
was

Multus labor affert plus lucrum. Quantus sudor, tantus dulcedo. Qui, habeo appetitus acer, cupio paululus condimentum.

Miles huc tendo video ; plurimum argentum fulgeo in arma ; qui causa ? Qui res sum ?

Post praelium, multus aurum et alius opis invento in castra Persæ.

Quantus nummus quisque servo in arca suus, tantus fides habeo, et qui habeo paululus pecunia, habeo etiam paululus fides.

Ecquid novum sum in civitas de Nero ? Sub mors decumbo super lectus, et bibo aliquantus tepidus aqua.

Postquam discedo a tu, exaro hic literula, et curo vito verbum, qui possum affero aliquis obscuritas.

Non tam ille opus sum imperium quam exemplum. Puer jam pervenio ad ætas, ut debeo ago prudenter. Qui opus sum verbum ?

Nunc usus sum tuus opera ; nam, in res capitalis, iudex debeo ago caute ; et opus sum magnus documentum.

Virtus sum causa victoria ; itaque is sum cædes hostis,

was the slaughter of the enemy, that the victorious Romans did not drink more water than blood of the barbarians out of the bloody river.

When the old men perceived the approach of the enemy, they met them in the very entrance of the gates, and an hundred men of an age quite worn out fought against fifteen thousand; so much courage and strength does the sight of one's country and home inspire.

Blasius was a man capable of profound thought, firm in his resolution, despising death and avoiding ambition; he was a quick discerner of things, and a stickler for what was right; but he was obstinate in wrath and a devourer of much meat.

The Emperor's freed man was a man able to endure cold, and capable of bearing want; but he was afraid of the lash and unacquainted with war; he was skilled in musick, fond of pleasure, and a lover of wine; nay he was greedy of praise, covetous of applause, but equally neglectful of friends and enemies: He was however, most observant of justice, and nobody was more reverentful of the gods.

The man, whom I mentioned above, was of a fickle temper, at first he was desirous of war, greedy of military glory, and weary of learning;

hostis, ut victor Romanus non bibo plus aqua quam sanguis barbarus de cruentus flumen.

Cum senex presentis adventus hostis, occurro in ipse angustia porta, octentum vir effatus atus pugno adversus quindecim mille, tantum animus viresque conspectus patria, penatesque inspire.

Blasius sum vir capax altus mens, tenax propositum, spernax mors et fugax ambitio; sum sagax res, et pertinax rectum; sed sum pervicax ira, et edax multus cibus.

Imperator libertus sum homo patiens albor et tolerans penuria; sed sum metuens flagellum et insolens bellum; sum sciens musica, cupiens voluptas, et amans vinum; imo sum appetens laus, sitiens fama; sed aequo negligens amicus et inimicus: Sum tamen servans aequum, et nemo sum reverens deus.

Vir, qui memoro supra, sum mobilis ingenium primo sum avidus bellum, avarus militaris gloria, et fastidiosus litera; sed postquam

ing ; but after Carthage, that vied with the city Rome for many years, was destroyed, he was fond of peace, and much taken up with physic.

Our general is skilled in many things, being expert at arms, well seen in the art military, versed in war, foreseeing what is to come, aware of things future, well assured of what will happen, but undaunted at danger, and not afraid of death ; his son is well acquainted with learning, but apt to learn vice, he is skilled in the law, versed in country affairs, and mindful of a good turn.

This man is void of learning, ignorant of philosophy, unskilled at arms, ignorant of the world, not afraid of the gods, unaccustomed to hardships, not used to slavery, fearless of death, unmindful of his condition and regardless of his reputation : His wife, ignorant of her extraction, is unsteadfast in her mind, wavering in her resolutions concerned and in pain for her affairs, and perplexed about the theft.

The orator defended two men guilty of parricide, and suspected of capital crimes : The one had been privy to a murder and concerned in a conspiracy, who being evidently guilty of the villany, and convicted of the crime, was condemned ; the other, being innocent of the facts,

not

*postquam Carthago, annis
multis urbs Roma per tot annus,
everto, sum cupidus pacis
et studiosus eloquentia,
curiosus medicina.*

*Noster dux sum peritus
multas res, gnarus arma,
prudens res militaris, ex-
pertus bellum, præsciens ven-
turum, providus res futu-
rus, certus futurus verum
intrepidus periculum, et in-
territus lethum ; is filius
sum doctus litera, sed docili-
lis pravum, sum consultus
jus, callidus res rusticus,
et memor beneficium.*

*Hic homo sum rudis
litera, ignarus philosophi-
a, inscius arma imperitus
res, haud timidus deus,
insuetus labor, insolitus
servitium, impavidus
mors, immemor fors, et
securus fama. Is uxor,
nescius genus, sum incer-
tus animus, dubius con-
siliium, sollicitus et trepidus
res suus, et anxius futu-
ram.*

*Orator defendo duo
homo reus parricidium,
et suspectus capitalis cri-
men : Alter sum conscius
caedes et noxius conjura-
tio, qui manifestus scelus
et convictus facinus, con-
demno : Alter innocens
factum, innoxius consilium
initus in re caput, insons
fraternus*

not concerned in the plot entered into against the king's life, innocent of his brother's blood, and found guilty of no crime, was acquitted.

Shame and modesty are weak restraints amongst men thirsting after power and regardless of honour: Accordingly Domitian proceeded to huge excesses of lust, rage, cruelty, and avarice, and raised so great a hatred against himself, that he quite wiped off the merits of his father and brother.

Vespasian, the emperor, was apt not to remember offences and quarrels; he took patiently the ill language uttered against him by the lawyers and philosophers; and Galba was not regardless of fame, not covetous of other men's money, but greedy of the public money, and not lavish of his own, could bear with his friends and freed men, was capable of empire, had he not governed.

Sylla was fond of pleasure, but fonder of glory; he hastened with his victorious army from Asia; and indeed since Marius had been so cruel against his friends, how great severity was there occasion for, that Sylla might be revenged of Marius?

Most men are desirous of new things. There is much good in friendship, much mischief in discord, Cicero

2 2

had

fraternus sanguis, et compertus nullus flagitium, absolvo.

Pudor et modestas sum infirmus vinculum apud homo avidus potentia et securus decus; Itaque Domitianus progredior ad ingens vitium libido, iracundia, crudelitas, et avaritia, et concito tantum odium in sui, ut penitus aboleo meritum pater et frater.

Vespasianus, Princeps, sum immemor offensa et inimicitia; leniter fero convicium dictus in sui a claudicus et philosophus; et Galba sum vir non appetens alienus pecunia; sed avarus pecunia publicus, et non profusus suus; patiens amicus et libertusque, capax imperium, sed non impero.

Sylla sum cupidus voluptas, sed cupidus gloria; propero cum victor exercitus ab Asia; et sane quum Marius sum tam ferus in is amicus; quantus savitia opus sum, ut Sylla vindico de Marius?

Plerique homo sum cupidus res novus. Sum multus bonum in amicitia; multus malum in discordia.

had less courage than Julius Cæsar, but he had more honesty. If thou art conscious of no fault, do not fear.

No one of those, whom riches and honours have placed in an high eminence, is happy. Live mindful of old age and death, which silly men think the greatest of all evils.

Sicily at the beginning, was the country of the Cyclops; after they were destroyed, Cocalus seized the government of the Island; after whom each of the cities fell under the power of tyrants, in which no country was ever more fruitful.

It was thought that Olympias, the wife of Philip, king of Macedon, encouraged Pausanias to the Murder of her husband, and that Alexander, his son, was not ignorant of the plot.

All France is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgæ inhabit; another the Aquitani; the third, they who in their own language are called Celtæ; in ours, Galli; of all these the Belgæ are the bravest.

The Athenians, as they had first revolted from Alexander, so they first began to repent changing the contempt of the enemy into admiration, extolling the youth of Alexander

dia. Cicero habeo minus fortitudo quam Julius Cæsar, sed habeo plus probitas. Si sum conscius nullus culpa, ne timeo.

Nemo iste qui divitiarum honoreque pono in altus fastigium sum felix. Vivo memor senectus et mortis, qui imperitus puto magnus omnis malum.

Sicilia sum a principium patria Cyclops; postquam ille extinguo, Cocalus occupo regnum insula, post qui singulis civitas concido in imperium tyrannus, qui nullas terra sum ferax.

Credo, Olympias, uxor Philippus, rex Macedonia, hortor Pausanias ad cades maritus suus, et Alexander is filius non exto ignarus insitiæ.

Omnis Gallia sum divisus in pars tres, qui unus Belgæ incolo, alius Aquitani; tertius, qui ipse lingua appello Celtæ; noster Galli; hic omnis Belgæ sum fortis.

Atheniensis, sicuti primus deficio ab Alexander, ita primus capsi penitet, vertens contemptus hostis in admiratio, extollens pueritia Alexander, qui sperno

ander, which they had despised before, above the bravery of old generals.

Gordius, spying a young lady of excellent beauty, at the gate of the city, asked her which augur he should consult? When she understood the cause of his enquiries, being skilled in the art, she told him, that he should be a king, and promised, that she would be the companion of his life and hope. This offer seemed the chief happiness of a kingdom.

Man, who is a partaker of reason and speech is more excellent than the beasts, who are void of reason and speech; but the mind of man has gotten reason in vain, unless he is mindful of his duty.

Cæsar resolves to take Dumnorix along with him into Britain; because he knew him to be desirous of change, fond of power, of a great spirit, and great authority among the Gauls; though he desired mightily that he might be left in Gaul.

Titus Sempronius was sent into Sicily with these land and sea forces, being ready to pass over into Africa, if the other Consul should be sufficient to keep the enemy from Italy. Less force was given to Cornelius, because L. Manlius, the Prætor was sent into Gaul with a considerable army.

*sperno antea, supra virtus
vetus dux.*

*Gordius, conspicatus,
virgo eximius pulchritudo,
ad portas urbs, percontor
quis augur consulo? Cum
intelliga causa questio,
peritus ars, respondes;
ille sum rex, et polliceor
sui sum socius vita is et spes.
Hic conditio video primus
felicitas regnum.*

*Homo, qui sum particeps
ratio et oratio, sum præstans
quam fera, qui sum expertus
ratio et oratio; sed animus
homo fortior ratio frustra,
nisi sum memior officium suus.*

*Cæsar constituo duco
Dumnorix sui cum in
Britannia, quod nosco is
cupidus res novus, avidus
imperium, magnus animus
et magnus auctoritas inter
Gallus; quamvis ille
magnopore contendo uti in
Gallia relinquo.*

*Titus Sempronius mitto
in Sicilia cum hic terrestres
maritimusque copia,
transmissurus in Africa,
si alter Consul sum satis
arceo hostis ab Italia.
Minus copia do Cornelius,
quia L. Manlius Prætor
mitto in Gallia cum haud
invalidus præsidium.*

After

Deinde

After that the Ambassadors came to Marfeilles, where they found, that the affections of the Gauls had already been gained by Annibal; but that they would hardly be very faithful to him, (their temper was so wild and savage) unless the affections of the great men were secured now and then by gold, of which the nation was very greedy.

Deinde legatus venit Messilia, ubi cognosco animus Gallus jam præoccupo Annibal; sed vix sum satis fidus, (ingenium sum adeo ferox et indomitus) ni animus princeps concilio subinde aurum, qui gens sum avidus.

C H A P. XIV.

Partitives, Numerals, Interrogatives, Comparatives, Superlatives and Adjectives taken Partitively, govern the Genitive Plural.

Partitives, &c. often govern the Genitive Singular of Collective Nouns, or Nouns of Multitude.

THOU hast chosen two companions; of which one is idle, and the other a fool, and they will make thee incapable of study.

It is a difficult thing whether of the two parties I shall take.

Romulus, who built the famous city of Rome, was the first of all the Roman kings.

None of the heathen gods delivered his worshippers.
Pylades

ELIGO socius duo, qui alter sum ignavus, alter stultus, et reddo incapax studium.

Sum difficilis, uter duo pars tueor.

Romulus, qui condidit urbem celeberrimam Romam, sum primus rex omnium Romanorum.

*Nullus divinus ethnicus libero cultor suus.
Pylades*

Pylades and Orestes cherish-
ed a mutual love; none knows
which was the more faithful
of the two.

Though thou art second
to none in learning, yet thou
fittest the fourth after thy
brother, and I am first after
thee.

Our parents are the next
after God, who ought to be
honoured.

Next to him, but next af-
ter a long interval, Salius fol-
lows. By lot he occupies
the space next to the light.
They coast along the shores
next to the Circean territory.
We see the place which is
next to the ocean.

The lion is accounted the
strongest and most generous
of all living animals. The
best and wisest of men do
sometimes err.

Most men are desirous of
new things. None of those
whom you see clothed in
scarlet, are happy.

Augustus after the civil
war, neither in his harangues
nor in his edicts called any
of the military fellow sol-
dier.

Alexander engaged with
none of his enemies, whom
he did not conquer, and laid
siege to no town, which he
did not take.

Spain was invaded by the
Romans before it knew itself,
and alone of all the provinces
understood

*Pylades et Orestes fovet
amor mutuus; nemo scio
uter sum fidelis duo.*

*Quamvis tu sum secun-
dus nullus doctrina, ta-
men sedeo quartus a fra-
ter, et ego sum primus a-
tu.*

*Parvus noster sum
proximus a Deo qui
debeo honoro.*

*Proximus hic, longius
sed proximus intervallo;
insequor Salius. Sors oc-
cupo spatium: proximus
lumen. Proximus Cir-
cæus rado litus terra.
Locus conspicio qui prox-
imus portus.*

*Leo habeo tum fortis-
tum generosus animal
omnis. Bonus et sapiens
homo aliquando erro.*

*Plerique homo sum cupi-
dus res novus. Nemo
iste qui video purpuratus
sum felix.*

*Augustus, post civilis
bellum, nec in concio, ne-
que per edictum appellat
ullus miles commilito.*

*Alexander congregior
cum nullis hostis, qui non
vinco; et obsideo nullas
urbs, qui non expugno.*

*Hispania obsideo a Ro-
manus, antequam cognos-
co sui et solus omnis pro-
vinciæ*

understood its own strength after it was conquered.

Who will wonder, that the enemy gave way? When one of the Consuls ordered his own son, though victorious, to be slain, because he had fought contrary to orders.

What every one of your friends may have written to the general concerning these two men, I know not; but neither of them is much to be blamed; the rest of the soldiers were also in the fault, and none of us is innocent.

This man entertains a stranger more handsomely than either of you; come, says he, here are eggs, hens, apples, and nuts; some of the apples are mellow; of the eggs some are long, some round; choose either of them you please, for both of them are good.

The Centurion, being surrounded by the enemy, was in great danger; but the chief of his friends, the choice of the young men, and the light armed of the soldiers, came running up to his relief.

The younger of the bees go abroad to their work, the more elderly labour within. Thus the most ancient of mortals practised industry; they lived without a crime, and therefore without punishment, nor was there need of rewards.

Who

vincia intelligo suos vires postquam vinco.

Quis miror hostis cedo? Quum alter Consul iubeo suos filius, quamvis victor, occido, quia pugno contra imperium.

Quis quisque tuus necessarius scribo ad imperator de hic duo vir, nescio; sed neuter is sum valde reprehendendus; reliquus miles sum etiam in culpa, et nemo ego sum innocuus.

Hic vir excipio hospes eleganter quam utervis tu, aut quisquam amicus vester; agite, inquam hic, sum ovum, gallina, pomum et nux; quidam pomum sum mitis; ovum alius sum oblongus, alius rotundus, eligo uterlibet hic; nam uterque is sum bonus.

Centurio, circumventus ab hostis, versor in magno periculum; sed precipuus amicus, lectus juvenis, et expeditus miles, concurro in auxilium.

Adolescens apis exeo ad opus, senex operor intus. Ita vetustus mortalis exerceo diligentia; ago sine scelus, eoque sine pana, nec opus sum premium.

Quis

Who of mortals can endure regal pride? Wherefore Tarquin, the seventh and last king of the Romans, was driven into banishment; and scarce two or three of his well wishers were left in the city.

After Sylla came over to Africa and to the camp of Marius with the horse, though raw before and unacquainted with war, he soon became the most accomplished of all. But what one of a thousand of great generals is happy?

The tyrants are conquered and fly back to the city. After this they begged assistance of the Lacedemonians. The war is renewed; five hundred of the Lacedemonians are slain in the battle; Critias and Hippolochus, the most cruel of all the tyrants, fall. But who amongst men, or which of the gods, bewailed their death?

Many of the soldiers were kissing the hands and feet of Otho, and calling him the only Emperor, whilst, in the mean time, Vitellus, ignorant of the victory, was drawing together the remaining strength of the German army; most of the soldiers were on their march, a few only of the veterans were left in the winter quarters.

Of Cæsar's men not above twenty were missing, but in
the

*Quis mortalis possum
tolero regalis superbia?
Itaque Tarquinus septimus
atque ultimus Romanus
ven, ago in exilium,
et vix duo aut tres fautores
relinquo in urbs.*

*Postquam Sylla venit
in Africa atque in castra
Marius cum equitatus,
quamvis rudis antea et
ignarus bellum, brevis se
solers omnis. Sed quotusquisque
magnus dum
sum felix?*

*Tyrannus vinco, et in
urbs refugio. Post hic
peto auxilium a Lacedæmonius.
Bellum redintegro; quingenti
Lacedæmonius interficio in prælium;
Critias et Hippolochus,
omnis tyrannus fœvus,
cado. Sed quisquam
homo, quisve deus,
lugeo mors?*

*Multus miles exosculator
manus ac pes Otho, unicufque
imperator prædico dum,
interim, Vitellius, nescius
victoria; traho reliquus vires
Germanicus exercitus;
plerique miles sum in iter;
pauci tantum veteranus
relinquo in hiberna.*

*Cæsar miles non amplius
viginti sum desideratus*

the castle there were none of the soldiers but were wounded, four of the centurions lost their eyes, thirty thousand arrows were shot into the castle by the enemy, and in the shield of Scæva, the centurion, were found two hundred and thirty holes.

The most excellent man of our city was killed in battle. Thou art one of the blood of the nymphs.

tus, sed in castellum nemo miles. omnino sum quin vulnero, quatuor centurio amitto oculus, 30,000. sagitta conjicio in castellum ab hostis, et in scutum Scæva centurio invenio 230 foramen.

Præfatus noster civitas interficio in praelium sum nymphæ sanguis una.

C H A P. XV.

Adjectives that signify *Likeness* or *Unlikeness*, *Profit* or *Disprofit*, *Meetness* or *Unmeetness*, *Pleasure* or *Displeasure*, *Relation*, *Friendship*, *Hatred*, *Due Submission*, *Favour*, *Resistance*, *Difficulty*, *Trust* or belonging to any thing, govern the Dative.

Adjectives that imply *Motion*, *Tendency*, or *Fitness*, for any thing, admit *ad* before the Noun in the Accusative, on which the *Fitness* falls.

Participial Adjectives, ending in *bilis* and *dus*, and all Passive Participles commonly govern the Dative.

VIRTUE is pleasant to the righteous, profitable to all that love it, and not unprofitable to any.

He that denies the fault, that he had committed, is a liar

VIRTUS sum jucundus justus, utilis omnis qui diligo is et non inutilis ullus.

Qui denego culpa qui patro, sum mendax, et

Jiar, and too much like the devil.

A loud noise is inconvenient for learners, it is prejudicial to study, but a silent school is very helpful both to master and scholars.

Death is common to me and thee, to men and women, to old and young; the grave is a house common to all creatures.

A conscience, free from guilt, laughs at false accusers; but fear is proper to guilty persons.

Glory surviveth good men after death; death taketh not their crown away.

That servant is not fit for me, who is unfit for business; but he only is convenient for me, that hath strength and understanding fit for work.

The man, who is forward to vice, is exposed to the devil's temptations, which enemy of mankind has been long accustomed to mischief, and rejoiceth to find a man inclined to impiety.

That knotty piece of wood can be entered by no wedge. Our deliverers ought always to be gratefully remembered by us, who have received our safety from their hands.

Nothing is so like death as sleep. Is there any thing

E

more

et nimis similis diabolus.

Streptus sonorus sum incommodus discens, sum maxime studium; sed schola tacita valde sum auxiliarius tum praeceptor tum discipulus.

Mors sum communis ego cum tu, vir cum femina, senex cum juvenis; sepulchrum sum domus communis animal omnis.

Conscientia immunis a reatu, irrideo calumniator; sed timor sum proprius conscius crimen.

Gloria sum superstes bonus post mors; mors non aufero corona is.

Servus iste non sum aptus ego; qui sum ineptus ad negotium; vero ille solus sum idoneus ego, qui habeo vires et intellectus promptus ad labor.

Qui sum proclivis ad vitium, sum expositus ad tentatio Diabolus, qui inimicus genus humanus sum assuetus diu ad malus, gaudeo que invenio animus pronus ad impietas.

Lignum iste nodosus sum penetrabilis cuneus nullus ferreus. Liberator noster sum ser. per memorandus grate ego, qui accipio incolumitas a manus ille.

Nihil sum tam similis mors quam somnus.

An
sum

more like madness than anger. There is something like understanding in brutes. Nothing is more useful to man, than the study of good letters.

Mallows are wholesome for the body, useful to the sick, hurtful to no man; but some medicines are unprofitable to the physician himself, destructive to health, and pernicious to the patient.

The victory, which Cæsar obtained in the plains of Pharsalia, was baneful to his country, destructive to the Commonwealth, pernicious to the Roman name, fatal to the city, and dismal to human kind.

Fortune is ever kind to you; my trade is profitable to me; the stars are beneficial to mariners; we shall loose from the harbour tomorrow; may it be lucky, fortunate, and happy to us all.

My colleague is delightful to his friends, agreeable to his companions, acceptable to all, and unpleasant to nobody; without him, and without the study of letters, life itself would be tasteless to me.

Dew on the tender grass is agreeable to cattle; and sleep is agreeable to a traveller; a burden is irksome to a sluggish ass, and labour troublesome to a lazy person; an unripe grape is sour to the taste, and wind is a sad thing for the trees.

Be

sum quidquam similis insaniam quam ira. Sum quidquam similis mens in brutum. Nihil sum utilis homo, quam studium bonus literarum.

Malva sum salubere corpus, utilis æger, et pestifer nemo; sed quidam medicamentum sum inutilis medicus ipse, perniciosus valetudo, et exitiosus ægrotus.

Victoria, qui Cæsar adipsiscor in campus Pharsalia, sum calamitosus patria, damnosus Respublica, exitiabilis Romanus nomen, funustus urbs, et dirus humanus genus.

Fortuna semper sum benignus tu; meus ars sum fructuosus ego; Stella sum commodus nauta; solvo e portus cras; qui bonus, faustus, felixque sum ego omnis.

Meus collega sum jucundus amicus, acceptus comes, gratiosus omnis, et injucundus nemo; sine is, et sine studium literarum vita ipse forem insuavis ego.

Ros in tener gramen sum gratus pecus, et somnis sum dulcis viator; onus sum ingratus piger asinus, et labor molestus ignavus; immaturus uva sum acerbus gustus, et ventus sum triste arbor.

Sum

Be thou just to all, kind to all, intimate with few, fawning to none, true to your lord; faithful to your master, gentle to your petitioner, merciful to enemies, and unjust to nobody; thus you will be dear to all, and hated by none.

Nero at first was friendly to good men and addicted to the study of the muses; but the latter part of his life was contrary to the former; for now he was harsh to, and angry with those that advised him; spiteful and enraged against mankind; an enemy to all, hated by the gods, and many things were crosses to him.

The arguments concerning the former pyramids appear dark to some, doubtful to others, and clear to few; but the three remaining pyramids, being situated on a hill, are visible to sailors and known to all the world.

In Africa the places that are next to our sea, nigh to Carthage, or near to Mauritania, are very fertile, but the places bordering on Numidia, and nearer to the scorching heats, are more barren.

Decency is adapted to the nature of things; thus some colours are proper for mourners, and others quite improper for this purpose; the morning is friendly to the muses and fit for study; a town situated on a shore is convenient for trade; but without walls

it

Sum tu æquus omnis, benevolus cunctis, familiaris pauci, blandus nullus, fidus dominus, fidelis herus, lenis præcans, mitis hostis, et iniquus nemo; sic sum carus omnis, et odiosus nullus.

Nero primo sum amicus bonus et deditus studium musa; sed posterior pars vita sum contrarius prior; nam jam sum asper et iratus monitor, infestus ac infensus humanus genus, inimicus omnis, invisus deus, et multus sum adversus ille.

Argumentum de prior pyramis video obscurus quidam, dubius alius, et perspicuus pauci; at tres reliquæ pyramis, situs in mons, sum conspicuus nauia et notus omnis.

In Africa locus qui sum proximus noster mare, propinquus Carthago, aut vicinus Mauritania, sum ferax, sed locus finitimus Numidia et propior ardor, sum magis sterilis.

Decor sum accommodatus natura res; sic quisdam color sum convniens luxus, et alius prorsus ineptus hic res; aurora sum amicus musa, et apertus studium; urbs appositus litus sum idoneus commercium 2.

it will be exposed to the enemy.

Nothing is difficult or hard to a brave man; to him no place is dangerous, no battle terrible, no sea unpassable; all hardships are easy and light to such a man: Yet his mind is always disposed to peace, but ready and prepared for war.

The poet married a wife equal in age, and every way a match for him; she was like her mother, her lips rivalled the roses; and as a matron is diverse and different from a strumpet, so she was unlike her sister: But there is a fault different from this fault; her spirit was unsuitable and unequal to her fortune; sometimes she was inconsistent with herself; now she is dead; death is common to every age.

Heaven is allied to earth, nature is ever consistent with itself, and men's fortune is agreeable to their manners: Thus the savage people bordering on Ethiopia are subject to sad slavery, exposed to many hardships; and yet, if you consider their strength, they are inferior to none of the neighbouring nations.

A good man is affectionate towards his parents, beneficent to his relations, benevolent to his friends, grateful to his well wishers, well affected towards good men, kind to all,
injurious

commercium; sed sine murus opportunus hostis.

Nihil sum difficilis aut arduus vir fortis; is nullus locus sum periculofus, nullus praelium gravis, nullus mare inuis; omnis labor sum facilis et levis talis vir: Tamen animus sum semper pronus pax, sed promptus et paratus bellum.

Poeta duco uxor aequaevus, et omnimodo par fui: sum similis mater; labium sum æmulus rosa; et ut matrona sum dispar atque discolor meretrix, ita sum dissimilis soror: Sed sum vitium diversus hic vitium; animus sum alienus et impar fortuna; nonnunquam sum discors fui; nunc mortuus sum; mors sum communis omnis ætas.

Cælum sum cognatus tellus, natura semper sum concors fui, et homo fortuna sum consentaneus mos: Sic ferus natio confinis Æthiopia sum subiectus tristis servitium, obnoxius multus injuria; et tamen, si speculo vires, sum secundus nullus finitimus gens.

Bonus sum pius in parens, beneficus in propinquus, benevolus erga amicus, gratus adversus fautor, bene animatus in bonus, benignus erga omnia,

injurious to none, harsh to nobody, and not cruel nor severe to an enemy.

This fellow is good for nothing, but his brother is good for many things; his shoes are tight and meet for his feet, his clothes are light and convenient for running, and the ground is proper for that purpose.

The general is slow to punishment; swift to rewards; bent on war; his son too is alert for battle, and not backward to danger; but his mind is prone to cruelty, inclined to vice, and disposed to any wickedness.

Death, whose path must once be trodden by all, is terrible to the wicked, with whose life all good things are extinguished; but desirable to good men, whose praise cannot die, and whose minds are conscious to themselves of integrity: Let us therefore imitate the life of good men, who are born for glory, though they be often despised by the wicked.

Liberty is equally desirable to the good and to the bad, to the brave and to the dastardly: Wherefore Appuleius did not cease to maintain the laws of the Gracchi; so much spirit did Marius inspire, who had ever been an enemy to the

A. 2

nobility.

nis, injuriosus in nullus, acerbus in nemo, neque crudelis nec saevus in hostis.

Hic homo sum utilis ad nullus res, sed frater sum idoneus ad multus res; calceus sum habilis et aptus ad pes, vestis sum levis et commodus ad cursus, et locus sum opportunus ad is res.

Dux sum piger ad pœna, velox ad præmium, promptus ad bellum; filius quoque sum celer in pugna; et haud ignavus ad periculum; sed animus præceptus sum in crudelitas, propensus ad vitium, et paratus ad omnis nefas.

Mors, qui via sum semel calandus omnis, sum terribilis malus, cum qui vita omnis bonus extinguo; sed optabilis bonus, qui laus non possum emorior; et qui mens sum conscius sui reatum. Imitor igitur vita bonus, qui sum natus gloria, licet saepe sum despectus malus.

Libertas sum æque optabilis bonus et malus, strenuus et ignavus: Itaque Appuleius non desisto assero Gracchianus lex, tantum animus Marius do, qui semper sum inimicus nobilitas. At Tiberius

rius

nobility. But Tiberius refused the title of father of his country, lest afterwards he should be found unequal to so great an honour.

Subrius, the tribune, being asked by Nero, why he had not discovered the conspiracy? replied, because I hated you, nor was any of the soldiers, quoth he, more faithful to you than I, whilst you deserved to be loved; I began to hate you after you became a murderer of your mother, and of your wife; a charioteer, a comedian, and an incendiary.

The Romans were now so powerful, that they were a match for any of the foreign nations. Wherefore the Consul provides forces, arms, and other things necessary for the war very industriously; nor was the event of the war any other than the preparation had been; wherefore Antiochus was routed and forced to fly into Italy.

Nor was fortune more favourable to the flying Gauls; but continual showers, frost and snow, fatigue and famine, consumed the miserable remains of this unhappy war. The people and nations, too, through whom they marched, followed the scattered Gauls, and slaughtered vast numbers of them.

After the death of the king, the Alexandrians sent ambassadors

rius recusato appellatio pater patria, ne postea invenio impar tantus honor.

Subrius, tribunus, interrogatus a Nero, cur non patefacio conjuratio? respondeo, quia odi tu, nec quisquam miles, inquam, sum fidelis tu quam ego, dum merco amo; capi odi, postquam existo parricida mater et uxor, auriga, histrio, et incendiarius.

Romanus jam sum a deo validus, et sum par quilibet externus gens: Itaque Consul paro copiarum, arma, et alius necessarius bellum diligenter; nec eventus bellum sum alius, quam apparatus sum; quare Antiochus fugo, et cogo fugio in Asia.

Nec sum fortuna benignus fugiens Gallus; sed assiduus imber, gelu et nix, lassitudo et fames, obtero miser reliquiarum hic infelix bellum. Gens quoque et natio per qui habeo iter, selector palans Gallus, et occido magnus is numerus.

Post mors rex, Alexandrianus mitto legatus ad

sadors to the Romans, intreating that they would undertake the guardianship of the child, and defend the kingdom of Egypt, which they said Philip and Antiochus had divided betwixt them. This embassy was very acceptable to the Romans.

Ptolemy was as ridiculous to the Romans as he was cruel to his own subjects. His countenance was deformed, his stature short, his belly hanging out, that he was more like a beast than a man. He sent for his son from Cyrene, and slew him, lest the Alexandrians should make him king.

After Alexander had dismissed his soldiers, being now near his death, he asked his friends standing about him, whether they thought, that they could find a king like him? They all held their tongues. Then he said, that he knew not that; but that he forefaw how much blood Macedonia would shed in that contest.

Nor did the friends of Alexander without reason expect his kingdom: For they were men of such valour and dignity, that you would have thought every one of them kings. Never would they have found any equal to themselves, if they had not clashed among themselves; and Macedonia would have had many Alexanders,

ad Romanus, orans ut suscipio tutela pupillus, et tueor regnum Egyptus, qui dico Philippus et Antiochus divido inter sui. Hic legatio sum gratus Romanus.

Ptolemeus sum tam ridiculus Romanus, quam sum cruentus civis suus. Vultus sum deformis, venter prominubus, ut sum similis bellua quam homo. Arcesso filius a Cyrene, et interficio ille, ne Alexandrianus creo rex.

Postquam Alexander dimitto miles, jam proximus mors, percontor amicus circumstans, num existimo, sui possum invenio rex similis sui? Cunctus taceo. Tum dico sui nescio is, sed sui prospicio quantum sanguis funda in is certamen.

Nec amicus Alexander frustra regnum exspecto; nam sum vir is virtus ac veneratio, ut singuli is rex puto. Nunquam sui par reperio, si non inter sui concurreo; multusque Macedonia, pro unus, Alexander habeo, nisi for-
tuna

Alexanders, for one, had not fortuna is in mutuis pernici-
 fortune armed them for their cics armo.
 mutual destruction.

C H A P. XVI.

Adjectives, expressing *Length, Breadth, Height, Depth, Thickness* and *Distance*, govern the Noun following them, in the Accufative.

Adjectives, importing the *Measure, or Degree*, in which one thing excels another, govern the Ablative of the word, fignifying the *Measure or Degrée* of excefs.

MY book is two inches thick. A well forty feet deep, giveth not good water, if the fprings be bad.

The walls of Babylon, a city of Chaldea, were two hundred feet high; fome write they were three hundred feet high, and feventy feet thick.

A walk, a hundred yards long, and fix yards broad, that hath trees planted on each fide, is pleafant for thofe, that would recreate themfelves.

Othos and Ephialtes, the fons of Alous and Hiphimede, the daughter of Neptune, grew every month nine inches: Wherefore when they were nine years old, they endeavoured to climb up into heaven.

LIBER meus fum craffus pollex duo. Puteus profundus pes quadraginta non emitto aqua bonus, fi habeo fcaturigomalus.

Murus Babylon, urbs Chaldea, fum altus pes ducenti; nonnullus fcribo is fum altus pes trecenti; craffus feptuaginta quinque.

Ambulacrum longus virga centum, latus virga sex, qui habeo arbor fatus utrinque, fum jucundus is, qui volo recreo fui.

Othos et Ephialtes, filius Alous et Hiphimede, filia Neptunus, crefco fingulus mensis novem digitus; quare cum fum natus novem annus, conor afcendo in calum.

Rome

Roma,

Rome, which was, in the time of the old Romans, mistress of the world, and was called the eternal city, is distant fifteen miles from the sea of Tuscany, which the Romans formerly called Mare Inferum. Tyber is distant twenty miles from Rome, to the north and east.

He pitched his camp, six miles from the enemy. Annibal was, at that time, three days journey from Tarentum.

This garden is a hundred feet long, and sixty broad; here are three beds set with lettuce, every one of which is three feet broad, and five feet long; but that which pleases me best, is a bed of a foot high, upon which I sit and read the old poets.

This wall is five feet six inches high, and three hundred cubits long; and these trees are twenty feet long, and two feet round.

In this climate, about the day of the equinox, a gnomon, seven feet high, casts a shadow not above four feet long.

Tell in what country the expanse of heaven does not extend above three ells, and thou shalt be the great Apollo.

The wall is six feet higher than the rock, and the turrets are

Roma, qui tempus vetus Romanus sum domina orbis, et voco eternus urbs, absum quindecim mille passus a mare Thufcia, qui Romanus olim appello Mare Inferum. Tybur disto a Roma viginti passus versus septentrio et oriens.

Pono castra sex mille passus ab hostis. Annibal, is tempus, absum vix triduum a Tarentum.

Hic hortus sum centum pes longus, et sexaginta latus; hic sum tres area constus lactua, qui singuli sum tres pes latus, et pes quinque longus; sed qui placeo ego maxima, sum area pes unus altus, constus herba, super qui sedeo et lego vetus poetarum magnus voluptas.

Hic maceria sum quinque pes sex digitus altus, et trecenti cubitus longus; et hic arbor sum viginti pes longus, et duo pes crassus.

In hic tractus, circa dies equinoctium, gnomon septem pes altus, reddo umbra non amplius quatuor pes longus.

Dico qui in terra spatium celum non pateo amplius tres ulna, et sum magnus Apollo.

Murus sum sex pes altus quam rupes, et turris sum

are ten feet higher than the wall.

I am two feet taller than you, and you are a foot and a half taller than my brother.

The sun is many times bigger than the earth, and the earth is many times bigger than the moon.

By how much greater the battle was, by so much more famous was the victory of Conon; the Lacedemonians, being conquered, take to flight. The disease of the covetous man is scarcely curable; for the more he has, the more he desires.

It is much more laborious to conquer one's self, than an enemy; but the more difficult any thing, the more honourable it is.

This condition was so much the more grievous to them; by how much it was the later; for formerly they had quelled, in the Delphic war, the fury of the Gauls, terrible both to Asia and Italy.

The exploits of the Athenians were great and glorious enough; but yet somewhat less than they are represented; but because their writers were men of great parts and eloquence, the actions of the Athenians are celebrated through the whole world for the greatest.

sum deni pes altus quam murus.

Ego sum duo pes longus quam tu, et tu sum sesquipes longus quam meus frater.

Sol sum multus pars major quam terra, et terra sum multus pars major quam luna.

Quantum major praelium sum, tantum clarior sum victoria Conon; Lacedaemonius, victus, fuga capesso. Morbus avarus vix sum medicabilis; nam quod plus habeo, id plus cupio.

Sum multum operosior supero sui ipse quam hostis; sed quod quid sum difficilior, hoc praeclearior sum.

Hic conditio sum tantum amarus is, quantum sum serior; nam antea frango, in Delphicus bellum, violentia Gallus, terribilis et Asia et Italia.

Res gestus Atheniensis sum satis amplus et magnificus, verum tamen aliquid quantum minor quam ferro; sed quia auctor sum homo magnus ingenium et facundia, factum Atheniensis celeberrimum per totus orbis pro maximum.

C H A P. XVII.

Adjectives, Participles and Verbs, govern Nouns in the Accusative, by Synecdoche.

BESPRINKLED about his fillets with gore and black poison.

I was astonished, oppressed as to my mind with dubious fear, my locks stood erect, and my voice clave to my jaws.

Thou must be covered as to thy locks, hid with a purple veil.

O happy, on account of the piety of thy son.

Before the altars, we are covered with a Phrygian vestment about our heads.

Girded with painted lace, around the Sidonian cloak.

Groaning much, and shaken in his mind, on account of love.

Juno, not yet satiated as to her old indignation, sent down Iris from heaven.

Here first he places four bullocks black as to their backs.

Mad discord, infolded with bloody fillets, as to her viperous hair.

He rejoiced on account of the land of his own name.

There was a laurel in the middle of the house, sacred as to its boughs.

PERFUSUS sanies vitæ aterque venenum.

Tum vero anceps mens formido pressus obstupeo, flo coma, et vox faux hæreo.

Purpureus velo coma adopertus amictus.

O fortunatus, pietas filius.

Caput ante ara Phrygius velo amictus.

Sidonia pectus chlamys circumdatus limbus.

Multus gemens, que animus labefactus amor.

Juno, nondum expletus vetus indignatio, dimitto Iris e calum.

Quatuor hic primum nigrans tergum juvencus constituo.

Discorda demens, viperus crinis, vitta innexus cruentus.

Lætor terra sui nomen.

Laurus sum teclum medius, sacer coma.

Each

Duo

Each one brandishes two Alpine spears, in his hand, covered as to his body with long shields.

*Duo quisque corusco
gasum manus, scutum pro-
tectus corpus longus.*

C H A P. XVIII.

Adjectives of the Comparative degree, govern the Ablative, when *quam* is omitted, in Latin.

When *quam* is expressed, the Noun, or Pronoun, that follows it, is either in the Nominative to some Verb understood, or is in one of the oblique Cases, and governed by some word understood.

MY father is richer than yours, and I shall have a greater portion than you; but yet I desire virtue which is better than riches.

That man, that has a good conscience, is more safe than a fortified city; for a serene mind will sustain more storms than the strongest fortification.

Nero was the most depraved of all the Roman Emperors; none was of a more cruel disposition than he; nor committed greater crimes than he.

Nothing is sweeter than liberty. The first epistle of Horace is sweeter than any honey.

Nothing is sweeter to the mind than the light of truth.

In

*PATER meus sum o-
pulentus tuus, et ha-
beo dos magnus quam tu;
sed tamen cupio virtus,
qui sum bonus divitiarum.*

*Qui habeo conscientia
bonus, sum tutus urbs
munitus; mens enim se-
renus sustineo multus op-
pugnatio quam arx mu-
nitus.*

*Nero sum pravus Im-
perator omnis Romanus;
nullus sum animus magis
inhumanus quam ille;
nec patro facinus magnus
quam ille.*

*Nihil sum dulcis liber-
tas. Primus epistola
Horatii sum dulcis qui-
vis mel.*

*Nihil sum dulcis mens
lux veritas. In discor-
dia*

In civil broils, where there is need of action, rather than deliberation, nothing is safer than dispatch.

The country of Campania is the finest of all; nothing is softer than the air, nothing more fruitful than the soil, nothing more hospitable than the sea.

Among the Scythians no crime is more heinous than theft; they just as much despise gold and silver as other mortals covet them.

A stroke follows more heavy than all that happened before, through the violence of fire. Rome is divided into fourteen quarters, whereof three were levelled with the ground.

After this victory, Cyrus carries the war into Lydia; where he routs Cræsus's army. By how much slighter this war was than the former, by so much the milder was the victory. Cræsus obtains the city Barce; in which, though he did not lead a king's life, yet he led a life next to royal majesty. This clemency was no less useful to the conqueror than the conquered.

The Macedonian war was by so much the more famous than the Carthaginian, by how much the Macedonians excelled the Carthaginians; wherefore the Romans raised more legions than usual, and sent for aid from Masinissa king of the
F Numidians,

dia civilis, ubi opus sum factum; magis consultum, nihil sum tutus festinatio.

Plaga Campania sum pulcher omnis; nihil sum mollior cælum, nihil uberior solum, nihil hospitior mare.

Apud Scythia nullus scelus sum gravis furtum; perinde aspernor aurum et argentum, ac reliquus mortalis appeto.

Clades sequor gravior omnis qui ante accido, per violentia ignis. Roma divido in quatuordecim regio, qui tres solum tenus dejicio.

Post hic victoria, Cyrus transfero bellum in Lydia; ubi fundo Cræsus exercitus. Quantum levior hic bellum sum prior, tantum mitio sum victoria. Cræsus impetro urbs Barce; in qui etsi non dego regius vita, tamen dego vita proximus regius majestas. Hic clementia non sum minus utilis victor, quam victus.

Bellum Macedonicus sum tantum clarior Punicus, quantum Macedo antecedo Pani; quare Romanus conscribo legio plus solitus, et accio auxilium a Masinissa rex Numidæ,

Numidians, and all their other allies.

It was indeed a sort of prodigy, that, out of fifty children not one was found, whom either paternal majesty, or the veneration of an old man, or the indulgence of a father, could reclaim from so great a barbarity. Was a father's name contemptible among so many sons? But the cause of the parricide was more wicked than the parricide itself.

The sun is many times bigger than the earth. It is much more laborious to conquer one's self than an enemy. Anger is nothing better, often worse, than those faults with which it is angry.

There is nothing more pleasant to a wise man than the sweetness of knowledge. Nothing can be more intolerable than a fortunate fool.

What is more desirable, or more excellent than wisdom?

By how much the longer Simonides considered the nature of God, by so much the more obscure the thing seemed to him.

Nature has given nothing to men better than shortness of life.

Alexander was sensible how much happier he was, who coveted nothing, than he, who required the whole world for himself.

Virginus, weeping, said never a word a long time. At last,

Numidæ, caterque omnis socius.

Sum prorsus ostentum genus, ut, ex quinquaginta liberi, nemo invenio qui aut paternus majestas, aut veneratio senex, aut indulgentia pater, a tantus immanitas revoco. Sumne paternus nomen adeo vilis apud tot filius? Sed causa parricidium sum sceleratior ipse parricidium.

Sol sum multus pars major terra. Sum multum operosior supero fui ipse quam hostis. Ira sum nihilum melior, sæpe pejor, hic diligitum qui irascor.

Nihil sum jucundus sapiens suavitas sapientia. Nihil possum sibi intolerabilis insipiens fortunatus.

Quid sum optabilis aut præstans sapientia?

Quantum diutius Simonides considero natura Deus, tantum res obscurior videor ille.

Natura do nihil homo melior brevis vita.

Alexander sentio quantum felix hic qui cupio nil, quam qui posco totus orbis sui.

Virginus, flens, mitto nullus vox diu. Tandem, tendens

last, lifting up his hands to heaven, he desired his fellow soldiers, that they would not attribute the villany of Appius Claudius to him ; that they would not abhor him as the murderer of his children. He told them, that the life of his daughter was dearer to him than his own.

tendens manus ad cælum, oro commilito ne attribuo scelus Appius Claudius sui ; ne averter sui ut parricida liberi. Dico is vita filia charior sum sui suus.

C H A P. XIX.

Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, lætus, extorris, profugus, liber and fretus, govern the Ablative.

These Participles, *cretus, creatus, editus, genitus, generatus, natus, ortus, prognatus and satus,* govern the Ablative.

THOSE persons are unworthy of the glory of heaven, who do not esteem virtue worthy of love, and are not contented with such pleasures as virtue giveth.

We rely upon the honesty of our friends, have neglected our own safety, and are now banished from our country.

A son, endued with a good wit, rejoiceth his father ; and he that is always mindful of his duty, is like a staff to his father's old age.

A boy that is born of poor honest parents, is more honourable,

IS sum indignus gloria cælum, qui non existimo virtus dignus amor, nec contentus voluptas ille, qui virtus præbeo.

Ego fretus probitas amicus, negligo incolumitas noster, et jam sum extorris patria.

Filius, præditus ingenium bonus, exhilato pater suus ; et qui sum semper memor officium, sum similis baculum senectus pater suus.

Puer prognatus parens pauper et honestus, sum magis

ourable, than he that is sprung from a wicked rich man.

God loveth virtue sprung from heaven.

The thing was worthy of a laurel, worthy of a chariot; but Cæsar was now so great, that he might despise triumphs.

Nothing is more worthy of a great and brave man, than clemency and placability.

To be always repining and complaining is unworthy of a man; but he, who is endued with virtue and satisfied with his lot, is truly rich and truly great.

Sylla, trusting to the strength of his party, returned from Asia: Whilst he staid at Athens he kept Pomponius with him, being charmed with the politeness and learning of the youth.

Ascanius, sprung from the ancient Trojan race, was born of a noble family; for his father Æneas was descended of Anchises and Venus, and Anchises was descended of king Assaracus.

If I be descended from a heavenly race, says Phaeton, give me a token of such a great descent. Your father's palace, replied his mother, is contiguous to our earth; go, and enquire of him, of what blood thou art sprung.

After him Aurelian undertook the government, born in Dacia,

magis honorandus ille qui ortus sum dives impius.

Deus amo virtus editus cælum.

Res sum dignus laurus, dignus currus; sed Cæsar jam tantus sum, ut possum contemno triumphus.

Nihil sum dignus magnus et præclarus vir clementia et placabilitas.

Semper murmuro et quero si indignus homo; sed qui præditus sum virtus, et contentus suis fors, sum vere dives et vere magnus.

Sylla, fretus opes pars, redeo ex Asia: Dum apud Athenæ moror, habeo Pomponius suicum, captus et humanitas et doctrina adolescens.

Ascanius, editus antiquus Trojanus stirps, natus sum nobilis genus; nam pater Æneas satus sum Anchises et Venus, et Anchises ortus sum rex Assaracus.

Si sum creatus cælestis stirps, inquam Phaeton, cedo nota tantus genus. Paternus domus, respondeo mater, sum conterminus noster terra; gradior, et scitor ab ipse, quis sanguis sum cretus.

Post is Aurelius suscipio imperium, Dacia ariundus,

Dacia, a man powerful in war, yet of a violent temper, and somewhat too inclinable to cruelty, who likewise most valiantly beat the Goths.

Cæsar, descended of the most noble and most ancient family of the Julii, not content with very many and very fortunate victories in Gaul, carried over his army into Britain.

The Gauls boast, that they are all descended of Pluto, and for that reason compute their reckonings of time, not from the number of days, but nights; and they so regulate their birth days, and the beginnings of their months and years, that the day comes after the night.

There were with Cæsar two brothers, Roscillus and Agus, men of singular courage: These, on account of their bravery were not only in high esteem with Cæsar, but were even accounted dear by the army; but, depending on Cæsar's friendship, despised their comrades.

Sandrocottus, a man born of a mean family, was the assertor of their liberty; but after his success he turned the title of liberty into slavery. This man, being ordered to be slain by Alexander, whom he had offended, made his escape; after which fatigue, as he lay fast a sleep, a lion of a

F 2

huge

ariundus, vir potens in bellum, tamen immodicus animus, et aliquantum propensior ad crudelitatem, quique strenue Gothi vinco.

Cæsar, genitus nobilis et antiquus Julii familia, haud contentus multis ac felix victoria in Gallia, trajicio exercitus in Britannia.

Galli prædico sui omnis pregnatus Dis, et ob is causa finio spatium tempus, non ex numerus dies, sed nox; et sic observo dies natalis, et initium mensis et annus, et dies subsequor nox.

Sum apud Cæsar duo frater, Roscillus et Agus, homo singularis virtus: Hic, propter virtus, sum non solum in honor apud Cæsar, sed etiam habeo carus apud exercitus: sed fractus Cæsar amicitia despicio fuus.

Sandrocottus, vir natus humilis genus, sum auctor libertas; sed post victoria, verto titulus libertas in servitus. Hic vir, jussus interficio ab Alexander, qui offendo, aufugio; ex qui fatigatio, cum jaceo captus somnus, i. e. ingens forma accedo.

Huge bigness came up to him as he slept, and wiped off the sweat.

Duilius, the admiral, not satisfied with the triumph of one day, ordered, during his whole life, when he returned from supper, torches to be lighted up, and flutes to play before him, as if he would triumph every day. Thus all mortals know the actions of those, who, endued with great power, pass their life in an exalted station.

They are men in name only, not in reality, who do things unworthy of a man. How comes it to pass, that nobody lives contented with his condition? Æneas flying from Troy, came to Italy. It is the part of a wise man to be content with his condition. He was glad at the death of his rival.

The chief of the fathers said, that his speech was worthy of the consular office, worthy of so many consulships, worthy of his whole life full of honour; that other Consuls, by betraying their dignity, had flattered the common people; that he, being mindful of the majesty of the fathers, had made a speech suitable to the times.

They had despised the edicts of Alexander the great, after the Persians and Indians had been conquered by him, and all nations dread his name:

accedo dormiens, et detergo sudor.

Duilius, imperator, non contentus unus dies triumphus, jubeo, per omnis vita, ubi redeo a cæna, funale præluceo, et tibia præcino, quasi quotidie triumpho. Itaque cunctus mortalis nosto factum is, qui, præditus magnus imperium, ago atas in excelsus.

Sum homo nomen tantum, non res, qui facio indignus homo. Qui fit, ut nemo vivo contentus fors suus? Æneas Troja profugus venio in Italia. Sum sapiens sum contentus suus fors. Sum latus mors æmulus.

Primores pater dico, concio is dignus sum imperium consularis, dignus tot consulatus, dignus totus vita plenus honos; alius Consul per proditio dignitas, adulor plebs, is memor majestas pater, habeo oratio accommodatus tempus.

Sperno edictum Alexander magnus, postquam Persa et Indus devinco ab is, et omnis gens horteco is: Igitur moneo Romanus,

name: Therefore they advised the Romans, that they would be content with their present fortune and would not provoke the arms, by which they knew the Gauls had been cut off, and the Macedonians despised.

No long time after, he seized the kingdom of the Hyrcanians: And thus being invested with the government of two powerful nations, he raised a mighty army for fear of Seleucus, and Theodotus, king of the Bactrians; but being quickly delivered from his fear by the death of Theodotus, he made peace and an alliance with his son.

Artabanus his uncle, is substituted in his place. But the Scythians, content with the victory, laid waste Parthia, and returned into their own country.

Being taken with the sweetness of that power, you suffer any wickedness to lurk under it.

The Lacedæmonians, after the manner of mankind, the more they have, the more they desire; for not content with the accession of the Athenian power, they began to affect the empire of all Asia, the greatest part of which was subject to the Persians.

The Roman Dictator, after the enemy was drawn up in fight, said, do you see, that the enemy depend on the nature

manus, ut sum contentus presens fortuna, nec provoco arma qui scio Gallus cædo, et Macedo contemno.

Non magnus post tempus, occupo regnum Hyrcanus: Itaque ita præditus duo magnus civitas, paro grandis exercitus, metus Seleucus, et Theodotus rex Bactrianus; sed cito liberatus metus, mors Theodotus, facio pax et fœdus cum is filius.

Artabanus, is patruus, substituo in is locus. Scythia autem, contentus victoria, depopulo Parthia, et revertor in patria.

Captus dulcedo is potestas, sino quilibet scetus lateo sub is.

Lacedæmonius, mos gens humanus, qui plus habeo, is plus cupio; nam non contentus accessio opes Atheniensis, capio affecto imperium totus Asia, qui pars maximus pæneo Persia.

Romanus Dictator postquam hostis instruo in conspectus, inquam, videone, hostis fretus sum natura locus?

ture of the place. But you, relying upon your arms and courage, fall upon the middle of the army.

Lyfimachus was born of an illustrious family of Macedonia; but much more famous by his valour; which was so considerable to him, that he exceeded all those, by whom the East had been subdued, for the greatness of his courage, as also in philosophy and strength of body.

The lieutenant general's part is one thing, and that of the general another. The one ought to do all things according to orders; the other according to his own pleasure: Therefore Sylla, being content with this, would not engage.

Cataline was born of a good family, but a wicked perverse temper, and infamous for the suspicion of parricide, as if, being taken with the love of Aurelia Orestilla, he had taken off his own son; because otherwise she was unwilling to marry him.

About the same time, Cornelius Lentulus returned out of Spain; who having given an account of the things done by him gallantly and successfully, for several years, before the Senate, and demanded, that he might be permitted to enter the city triumphant; the Senate thought his exploits worthy of a triumph.

At

cus? Sed tu fretus armis et animus, invado medius acies.

Lyfimachus natus sum illustris locus Macedonia; sed multum clarus virtus, qui tantus in is sum, ut vinco omnis qui Oriens domo, magnitudo animus, ut etiam philosophia et vires corpus.

Legatus pars sum alius, et imperator alius. Alter debeo ago omnis ad præscriptum, alter pro arbitrium suus: Quare Sylla, contentus hic, nolo dimico.

Catiline natus sum honestus locus, sed malus pravusque animus, e infamis suspicio parricidium, quasi, captus amor Aurelia Orestilla, tollo suus filius, quod aliter gravor nubo ille.

Per idem tempus, Cornelius Lentulus redeo ex Hispania; qui, expono in Senatus res sui per multus annus fortiter feliciterque gestus, postulo que ut triumphans sui invehor licet in urbs, res triumphus dignus cenfeo Senatus.

Primo

At first, relying upon the situation of their town, having shut their gates, they refused to submit.

*Primositus urbs fretus,
claudo porta imperium
abnuo.*

C H A P. XX.

Adjectives signifying *Plenty*, or *Want*, may govern the Genitive, or Ablative.

Adjectives of *Diversity*, govern the Ablative, with the Preposition, *a* or *ab*.

N. B. The Ablatives, that come under the first Rules are noted, in the following examples with the * *Asterism*.

HE, whose bags are empty of money, hath an house empty of friends, and a coat full of rents.

*ILLE, qui sacculus sum
vacuus * nummus, ha-
beo domus vacuus * ami-
cus, et tunica plenus * fis-
sura.*

A court, that is full of flatterers is pernicious to the prince, though he be rich in substance, abundant in honours.

*Aula, qui sum plenus
* parasitus, sum exitialis
princeps, quamvis sum
opulentus facultates, a-
bundans honos.*

A journey, a hundred and fifty miles long, tireth a horse, that hath not his belly moderately full of corn.

*Iter, longus milliare
centum et quinquaginta,
fatigo equus, qui non ha-
beo venter suus modicè
satur pabulum.*

My brother is of a very bad temper, and far different from my father, who is rich in the endowments of mind, though poor in estate.

*Frater meus sum indo-
lus malus longeque diver-
sus a pater, qui sum dives
bonus mens, quanquam
egenus facultates.*

All men hate those that are unmindful of a kindness, and

*Omnis odi is qui sum
immemor beneficium, et
omnis*

al

all men love a mind grateful and mindful of a good turn. Mutual benevolence is the great bond of human society : And without it, life itself is grievous, full of fear and anxiety, and void of all comfort and pleasure. Let us, therefore, avoid the crime of ingratitude above all others.

Historians say, that Cyrus, king of Persia, who conquered the greatest part of Asia, waged war, at last, against the Scythians, whose queen was named Tomyris, that his army was utterly routed, he himself slain, that his head was cut off, and thrown into a vessel full of blood.

The island is rich in cattle, well stored with goats, overflowing with milk, fertile in grain, fruitful in corn, and abounding in herbs. Its mountains are stored with brass and lead, and covered with wood.

This man is blessed with wealth, and rich in money ; his house is full of plate, replenished with precious things, and stuffed with jewels, his pockets are always loaded with silver, and strutted with gold.

This soldier formerly was frank of his money, abounding in wealth, profuse of his gold, lavish of his praise, proud of his victory, extravagant in his mirth, and too high spirited ; now he is loaded with

omnis amo animus gratus et memor beneficium. Mutuus benevolentia sum magnus vinculum humanus societas ; et sine is vita ipse sum gravis, plenus timor et anxietas, et vaeuus omnis solatium et voluptas. Fugio, igitur, crimen ingratus animus præ reliquis.

Auctor narro, Cyrus, rex Persia, qui domo maximus pars Asia, gero bellum tandem contra Scythia. qui regina appello Tomyris, exercitus is deleo, ipse occido, caput is abscindo, et conjicio in vas plenus sanguis.

Hic insula sum dives pecus, copiosus capra, abundans lac, fertilis fruges, fecundus annona ; et ferax herba. Mons is sum uber æs et plumbum ; et frequens sylva.

Hic homo sum beatus divitiæ, et opulentus pecunia ; domus is sum plenus vas, satur pretiosus res, et refertus gemma, crumena sum semper onustus argentum, et turgidus aurum.

Hic miles olim sum liberalis pecunia, largus opes, prodigus aurum, munificus laus, tumidus successus, immodicus lætitia, et nimius animus ; nunc sum gravis annis, fatiatus

with years, cloyed with age, and his wife is big with a boy.

These fields are rich in grain, fertile in corn, fruitful in victual, gay with grain and flowers; the cows and sheep are fat, their udders are strutted with milk.

Your brother is moderate in his desire, but yet he is in want of every thing, in need of help, poor in silver and gold, weak in strength, destitute of friends, but free from guilt.

No letter comes from you empty, or void of something useful; which I the rather admire and commend, because this age is barren in virtues and fruitful in vices.

This gentleman is free of all vice, void of a fault, and clear of wickedness; yet he is in want of help, being banished from his country, forced from his city and home, disappointed of his hope, deprived of his paternal estate, and destitute of all his possessions.

This young lady, deprived of her parents and wanting a portion, was the sharer of my dangers and shall be partner of my kingdom, her life has not been free of troubles, nor is her breast void of love.

The governor of the city, which is destitute of a garrison, is a man endued with virtue, abounding in wealth, but sparing of his money, mighty in war, but unable to restrain

*latiatum ævum, uxor sum gravidus *puer.*

*Hic ager sum locuples *fruges, satius *frumentum, frugifer *alimentum, lætus fruges et flos; vacca et ovis sum pinguis, uber sum distentus *lac.*

*Tuus frater sum modicus votum, attamen sum egenus omnis res, indigus opis, pauper argentum et aurum, tenuis *vires, inops amicus, sed vacuus crimen.*

Nullus epistola venio a tu jejunos, aut inanis aliquis utilis; qui eo magis miror et laudo; quia hic seculum sum sterilis virtus et fecundus vitium.

*Hic vir sum immunis sum omnis *vitium, exors culpa et purus scelus; tamen sum indigus opis, exsul patria extorris urbs domusque, irritus spes, exhaeres paternus bonum, et expers omnis fortuna.*

*Hic virgo, orbis *parens, et cassus *dos, sum particeps meus periculum, et sum consors regnum, vita non sum vacuus *molestia, nec pectus sum viduus *amor.*

*Praefectus urbs, qui sum nudus praesidium, sum vir compos virtus, pollens *opes; sed parcus pecunia; potens bellum, sed impotens ira; animus tamen*

restrain his passions; his mind, however, is generally calm, free from fear and disengaged from all cares.

Some animals are destitute of feet: But in Germany there are wild beasts, that are called alces, whose shape is like that of goats, which have legs without joints, and they are void of horns.

The victorious Regulus, an honest man and of ancient morals lovely to all, though ignorant of the liberal arts, after he had widely spread the terror of his name, and slain a great number of the Carthaginian youth, sent a fleet to Rome loaded with abundance of spoil, and heavy with a triumph.

Alexander, though full of dust and sweat, yet taken with the pleasantness of the river Cydnus threw himself into the cold water; then on a sudden a numbness seized his nerves: Yet afterwards he recovered his health and took Persepolis, the metropolis of the Persian empire, a famous city filled with the spoils of the world.

The Egyptians boast, that Egypt was always so temperate, that neither the winter's cold nor the heats of the summer's sun did incommode its inhabitants; that the soil is so fertile, that no country is more fruitful in food for the use of man.

Alcibiades

*tamen sum fere tranquillus, liber *terror, et solutus omnis *cura.*

*Quidam animal sum truncus pes: Sed in Germania sum bellua, qui appello alx, qui figura sum consimilis capra, qui habeo erus sine nodus, sumque mutilus *cornu.*

*Victor Regulus, probus vir, et vetus mos, amabilis cunctis, quamvis expers liberalis ars, quum latè circumfero terror fuis nomen, et cædo magnus vis juvenus Punicus, ad Roma mitto classis onustus ingens *præda, et gravis *triumphus.*

*Alexander etsi plenus pulvis ac sudor, tamen captus amœnitas flumen Cydnus, projicio sui præfrigidus aqua; tum repente rigor occupo nervus: Tamen postea recipio sanitas, et expugno Persepolis, caput Persicus regnum; urbs illustris refertus *spolium terra orbis.*

Ægypti prædico Ægyptus sum semper ita temperatus, ut neque hibernus frigor nec ardor æstivus sol premo is incola; solum ita fecundis, ut nullus terra sum ferax alimentum in usus homo.

Alcibiades,

Alcibiades, the Athenian, of a great family, in a great city, was much the completest of all the men of his age; fit for all things and shining in sense; it is said amongst all, that no man was more eminent than he either in vices or in vir-

Alcibiades, Atheniensis, natus summo genere, in amplius civitas, sum multum formosus omnia suus aptus, aptus ad res omnes, plenusque consilium; constat inter omnes, nemo sum excellens ille, vel in vitium, vel in virtus.

CHAPTER XXI.

Nouns signifying the *Instrument*,* *Cause*, or *Manner*, are governed, in the *Ablative*, by the efficient Adjective.

Adjectives of *Dearness* and *Cheapness*, govern the Nouns on which their influence falls in the *Ablative*.

Adjectives denoting some *Infirmity*, or *Affection* of *Body*, or *Mind*, govern the Nouns, that are the part affected, in the *Ablative*.

MY uncle has been a father to me for wholesome counsel. He, whose son I am by birth, did not take so much care of me.

PATRUUS meus sum pater ego consilium saluber. Is, qui filius sum natus, non impendo tantus cura in ego.

Thou art a servant in name; thou hast been a rebel indeed.

Sum servus nomen; sed sum rebellis ver.

My master's countenance is greatly changed when he and his beloved son guilty of

Vultus magister meus mutato magnopere, cum deprehendo filius dilectus confusus

* See the remarks on Chap. xxxiii. Appendix.

a lie: Sometimes he was pale with anger, now red with fury; and in the meantime, he, poor boy, was trembling for fear of punishment.

They, who are only christians in pretence, and in the mean time are hypocrites in heart, are enemies to their own souls: For though they may be subtle in the deceiving of men, they cannot deceive the omniscient God.

A mean cottage, dear at twenty shillings a year, oftentimes contains a man of great virtue.

A garment, cheap at a hundred and fifty pounds, sometimes covers a man, whose wit were dear at a groat.

A stout soldier exposeth his life for his king's sake; and though he be wounded in his head and limbs, sick of a fever, and weak in his whole body, yet he is never feeble in mind.

A pious man is unquiet in his mind, while he takes notice of other men's sins: For he very much desires the happiness of those, that neglect their own advantage; who, being slow of heart, as well as void of understanding, practise none of God's commands.

Mithridates was a man very brisk in war, extraordinary for courage, a general for conduct, a soldier in action, an
Hannibal

consciis mendacium: Modo sum pallidus ira, modo rubicundus furor; dum interea ille, miser, sum trepidus timor pœna.

Qui sum christianus prætextus solus, et interea sum simulator cor, sum inimicus anima suus: Quamvis enim cum astutus deceptio homo, non possum decipio Deus omnisciens.

Casula charus viginti solidus per annus, multoties contineo vir virtus magnus.

Vestis vilis libra centum et quinquaginta, aliquando tego homo, qui ingenium sum charus drachma.

Miles fortis infero sui in discrimen vita gratia rex suus; et quamvis sum saucius caput et membrum, ægrotus febris, et infirmus corpus totus, tamen nunquam sum debilis mens.

Pius sum inquietus animus, dum observo peccatum alius: Enim magno pere cupio felicitas ille, qui negligo commodum suus; qui, tardus cor æque ac inops mens, exsequor mandatum nullus Deus.

*Mithridates sum vir acer bellum, eximius virtus, dæx consilium, miles
manus*

| | |
|--|--|
| Hannibal for hatred against the Romans. | <i>manus, Hannibal odium in Romanus.</i> |
| He carries arms livid with weapons. | <i>Lividus gesto arma brachium.</i> |

C H A P. XXII.

The Verb *sum*, importing *Duty, Possession, or Property*, governs the Genitive.

Verbs of *Esteeming* and *Valuing* govern a Genitive of the *Value*, and the Accusative of the *Thing*.

atago, misereor and *miserescō*, govern the Genitive.

recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor and *memini* govern the Genitive.

Many Verbs, signifying a strong affection of the mind, as *discrucior, fallor, lætor*, &c. govern the Genitive.

It is the duty of children to observe their parents' instructions. It is the part of a fool to laugh always. It is the property of a wise man to be silent.

It is every one's part to look well to himself. The world is so full of enemies, that all men have need of caution, and it is our part to exercise prudence.

I am looking for the monitor, whose business it is to set down the late comers.

It is not the part of every one to reprove other persons,
but

SUM liberi observo præceptum parens. Sum stultus rideo semper. Sum sapiens fileo.

Sum unusquisque proficio sui bene. Mundus sum tam plenus inimicus, ut omnis habeo opus cautio, et sum noster exerceo prudentia.

Quæro observator, qui sum noto tardè veniens.

Non sum quilibet reprehendo alius, sed ille solum.

but their's only who are unblameable.

The kingdom of heaven is indeed their's, who are poor in spirit; and it shall be our's, if we observe God's holy commands. Let us therefore live mindful of duty and ready to every good work.

Those men value the honour of God as nothing, who call themselves christians, and would be accounted saints, but in the mean time are like beasts and given to all vices.

Worldly riches are esteemed little, when we see the better things of heaven, which ought to be the most highly valued.

I do not value that man much, who is a friend to every body.

I have a good horse, that I value at fifty pounds. I esteemed always a faithful friend at a great rate.

I care not a straw for his spite; nor value his threatening a rush; I value not thee of this.

I am busy about my own affairs.

I pity thy brother: I pity his folly, who has consumed his portion, and is now forced to beg from door to door.

I remember the report that I heard; but I have forgotten the time when.

It is the master's care, that the scholars learn their lessons, while they are at school; and it is the duty of parents to take

solum, qui sum inculpabilis.

Regnum caelestis sum ille, qui sum pauper spiritus; et sum noster, si obsexo mandatum sanctus Deus. Ergo vivo memor officium noster et promptus ad opus omnis bonus.

Is habeo honos Deus nihilum, qui voco sut christianus, et volo habeo sanctus, sed interea sum similis bestia, et deditus sum vitium omnis.

Divitia mundus pendo parvus, cum video bonus caelestis, qui debco fo multus.

Non aestimo iste magnus, qui sum amicus singularis.

Habeo equus bonus, qui aestimo quinquaginta mina. Semper aestimo amicus fidus pretium magnus.

Non pendo malitia is pilus, nec aestimo minæ is naucus; non facio tu hic.

Satago res meus.

Misereor frater tuus: Miserisco stultitia, qui fuus, dos consumo, et nunc mendico ostiatim.

Reminiscor fama qui audio; sed obtiviscor tempus.

Sum magister curo, ut discipulus disco lectio fuus, dum sum in schola; et sum parens curo, ut sum

Take care, that they be obedient in the master's absence.

This pen and this penknife are my brother's.

This house and that orchard are my father's.

The books, which you see, were my cousin's, but now they are my brother's.

It is the part of a foolish boy to love play, and neglect his studies.

Death pities none, neither rich nor poor.

It is the property of fools to value pleasure at a great rate.

It is the part of the same man, who dislikes the bad, to like the good.

It is the part of a wise man to forget injuries.

It is pleasant to remember past trouble.

A good man easily forgets injuries, but always remembers a good turn.

He is of a happy memory, who forgets nothing but injuries.

God himself commands thee to remember death.

Wise men value a good name more than riches or life itself.

Xantippe, Soerates's wife was employed sufficiently in quarrels and teasing.

Antiochus, though he liked Annibal's advice, yet would not act according to his counsel, lest the glory of the victory should be Annibal's and

G 2

not

sum morigerus præceptor abfens.

Hic penna et hæc scabellum sum frater.

Hic domus et iste pomarium sum pater meus.

Liber, qui video, sum confobrinus meus, sed nunc sum frater.

Sum stultus puer amolusus, et negligo studium.

Mors misereor nemo, nec dives nec pauper.

Sum stultus æstimo voluptas magnus.

Sum idem homo, qui improbus probo, improbo probus.

Sum sapiens obliviscor injuria.

Sum dulcis meminî actus labor.

Bonus vir facile obliviscor injuria, sed semper reminiscor beneficium.

Sum felix memoria, qui obliviscor nihil nisi injuria.

Deus ipse jubeo tu meminî mors.

Sapiens æstimo fama plus quam divitiæ vel vitia ipse.

Xantippe, Socrates uxor, satago ira et molestia.

Antiochus, tametsi probe consilium Annibal, tamen nolo ago ex sententia ille, ne gloria victoria sum Annibal, et non suus.

Vinco,

not his own. He was therefore, conquered, and remembered Annibal's counsel, when it was too late.

When it was told in the cities of Asia, that Berenice, the sister of Ptolemy, king of Egypt, was besieged with her little son in the city of Daphne, the Asiatics, remembering the dignity of her fathers and ancestors, and pitying her hard fortune, sent aid.

If cunning valuers of things esteem meadows and closes at a great rate, because that sort of possession can least be damaged, at how great a rate is virtue to be esteemed, which can neither be taken away by force nor by stealth?

Perseus king of Macedonia, forgetting his father's fortune, bid his soldiers remember the old glory of Alexander. In the first encounter he was victorious, nevertheless he sent ambassadors to the Roman consul, and desired peace, but could not obtain it.

Virginius begged, that they would pity him and his daughter, rather, that they would not hearken to the entreaties of the Claudian family, but those of Virginia's relations, and the three tribunes, who being created for the assistance of the common people, did implore their protection and aid.

Rashness is the property of youth; prudence of old age;
and

*Vinco, igitur, et memini
consilium Annibal cum
sum sero.*

*Cum nuncio in civitas
Asia, Berenice, soror
Ptolomæus, rex Ægyptus,
obsideo cum parvulus fili-
us in urbs Daphne, Asi-
aticus, recordans dignitas
pater et major, et misertus
is indignus fortuna, mit-
to auxilium.*

*Si callidus æstimator
res æstimo pratium et arca
magnus, quod is genus
possessio possum minime
lædo; quantum sum vir-
tus æstimandus, qui nec
possum eripio nec surpris-
io.*

*Perseus, rex Macedo-
nia, oblitus pater fortu-
na, jubeo suus miles remi-
niscor vetus gloria Alex-
ander. In primus con-
gressus sum victor, tamen
mitto legatus ad consul
Romanus, et peto pax,
sed non possum obtineo.*

*Virginius oro, ut mise-
reor sui et filia, potius,
ne audio prex gens Clau-
dius, sed is Virginia cog-
natus, et tres tribunus, qui
creatus ad auxilium plebs
imploro is fides et auxil-
ium.*

*Temeritas sum florens
ætas, prudentia senectus
et*

and love to riches the property of a tittle and narrow soul; as to despise them in comparison of virtue, is the property of a great and noble mind.

On the other side the Roman consul bid the Romans remember their former bravery. He put them in mind of the Aventine and Sacred Mount, that they should fight for their liberty, which they had lately recovered.

A wise man values pleasure at a very little; because it is the bane of the mind, and the cause of all wickedness and misery: But he values no possession more than virtue; because it is an ornament in prosperity, a comfort in adversity, and the fountain of all public and private happiness.

It is not the part of a wise man to say, I will live well tomorrow. Virtue is the most precious of all things. It is, therefore, the part of a fool to despise that, which all men ought to value more than riches and pleasure.

All the soldiers of Alexander, forgetting their wives and children, looked upon the Persian gold, and the riches of all the East, as their plunder; nor did they consider of wars and dangers, but the riches which they hoped to obtain.

Cæsar Octavianus, Mark Anthony, and Lepidus divid-

et amo divitiarum sum parvus angustusque animus: ut contemno is pro virtus sum magnus et sublimis animus.

Ex alter pars consul Romanus jubeo Romanus memini pristinus virtus. Admoneo is Aventinus et Sacer Mons, ut pugno pro libertas, qui nuper recuperero.

Sapiens voluptas facio minimum, quod sum pestis animus, et origo omnis scelus et miseria: Sed aestimo nullus possessio plus quam virtus; quia sum ornamentum in res secundus, solatium in adversus, et fons omnis publicus et privatus felicitas.

Non sum sapiens dico. vivo bene cras. Virtus sum pretiosus omnis res. Sum, itaque, stultus sperno is qui omnis debeo aestimo plus quam divitiarum et voluptas.

Omni miles Alexander obtutus conjux et liberi, duco Perficus aurum et opes totus Oriens, ut sum præda: nec memini bellum et periculum, sed divitiarum qui spero obtineo.

Cæsar Octavianus, Marcus Antonius, et Lepidus

ed the Roman empire among themselves. Asia and Egypt were Mark Anthony's. He married Cleopatra, the most beautiful woman of her age, who, desirous of the empire of the world, stirred him up to make war against Cæsar Octavianus; which was the cause of their ruin.

Cæsar Augustus dwelt nigh the forum, in a house that had belonged to Calvus the orator.

Never was there a more bloody battle; at last however, the victory was the Lacedæmonians'.

It is the property of a coward to wish for death; but it is the property of a great soul to despise an injury.

It is the duty of children to love and reverence their parents, and it is the duty of a scholar to honour his master.

It is my part to teach and direct; it is thy part to study hard, if thou desirest to be a scholar.

It is our part to regulate your courage; and it is your duty not to pry into the orders of your officers; but submissively to obey.

Look about, says Tellus, take pity on your own heavens, the poles are smoking, which if the fire shall destroy, your palaces will tumble down.

Pity such great hardships; take pity also on me, and be not

du, partior Romanus imperium inter sui. Asia et Egyptus sum Marcus Antonius. Duco Cleopatra pulcher femina sæculum suus, qui cupidus imperium terra orbis, impello is gero bellum contra Cæsar Octavianus; qui sum causa is exitium.

Cæsar Augustus habita juxta forum, in domus qui sum Calvus orator.

Nunquam sum cruentus prælium; ad postremum, tamen, victoria sum Lacedæmonii.

Sum timidus opto mors; sed sum magnus animus; despicio injuria.

Sum liberi amo et revereor parens, et sum discipulus honoro magister.

Sum meus doceo et præscribo; sum tuus studeo diligenter, si volo sum doctus.

Sum noster rego vester virtus; et vester sum non sciscitor imperium dux, sed modeste parco.

Circumspicio, aio Tellus, misereor calum vester; popus fumo, qui si ignis violo, atrium vester ruo.

Misereor tantus labor; miseresco quoque ego, ac ne

not troublesome; I am busy in my own office.

It is my duty to confess, and it is yours to forgive.

To do and suffer brave things is the part of a Roman.

It belongs to a brute to serve his belly.

After this a battle is fought: The Macedonians rush upon the sword, with contempt of an enemy so often conquered by them. Alexander himself attempted the most dangerous things; where he saw the enemy thickest, there he always thrust himself, and was willing the dangers should be his, not his soldiers'.

Part advised to call in Mithridates, king of Pontus; part, Ptolemy king of Egypt: But Mithridates was full of business of his own, and Ptolemy had always been an enemy to Syria. Wherefore all agreed upon Tigranes king of Armenia; who being sent for, held the kingdom of Armenia during eighteen years.

A good man easily forgets injuries, but always remembers a kindness. A wicked man sees the faults of others and forgets his own; but at length with sorrow shall he remember his villainies.

Cæsar settled the differences among the Æduans, and having exhorted them to forget their quarrels and disputes, he returned to the camp. They remembered

ne sum molestus, satago officium meum.

Meus sum fateor, et tuus sum ignosco.

Ago et patior fortis Romanus sum.

Belluinus sum ventoservo.

Post hæc prælium committo: Macedo ruo in ferrum, cum contemptus hostis toties a sui victus. Alexander ipse aggredior quisque periculofus; ubi conspicio hostis confertus, eo sui semper ingero, voloque periculum sum suus, non miles.

Pars suadeo arcesso Mithridates, rex Pontus; pars Ptolemæus rex Ægyptus: Sed Mithridates satago res suas, et Ptolemæus semper sum hostis Syria. Itaque omnis consentio in Tigranes rex Armenia; qui accitus, teneo regnum Syria per octodecim annus.

Bonus vir facile obliviscor injuria. sed semper reminiscor meritum. Improbis cerno vitium alius et obliviscor suus; sed tandem cum dolor recordor flagitium suus.

Cæsar compono his inter Ædus, et cohortus ut obliviscor controversia ac dissentio, redeo ad castra.

Ille

remembered his advice and followed his admonitions.

In the mean time, the Roman people received a terrible stroke from the Parthians: Nor can we complain; for after Crassus had pitched his camp at Nicephorium, deputies sent by king Orodes advised him to remember the treaties made with Pompey and Sylla. But the consul was gaping after the Parthian gold.

Let not the glare of gold and silver dismay you. In the very host of the enemy we shall find our troops; the Britons will espouse their own cause, the Gauls will recollect their former liberty, and the Germans will abandon the Romans.

Such was the greatness of Alexander's soul, that, though he left a son who was called Hercules, a brother who was named Arideus, and his wife Roxane with child; he forgot his relations and named the most worthy heir: Just as if it were unlawful for any other than a brave man to succeed to a brave man.

Epicurus valued pleasure at a great rate: But a wise man values pleasure at a very low rate.

Brave men little regard boasting words; and they value threats as nothing.

I do not value these men a farthing: I do not value the
augur

Ille memini consilium, et sequor monitum.

Interim Romanus populus accipio gravis vulnus a Parthi: Nec possum queror: nam, postquam Crassus pono castra apud Nicephorium, legatus missus a rex Orodes, denuncio ut memini foedus percussus cum Pompeius et Sylla. Sed consul in hio Parthicus aurum.

Ne fulgor aurum et argentum terreo tu. In ipse acies hostis invenio noster manus; Britanni agnosco suos causa, Galli recordor prior libertas, et Germani desero Romanus.

Tantus sum magnitudo animus Alexander, ut, quamvis relinquo filius qui appello Hercules, frater qui nomino Aridaeus, et uxor Roxane pregnant, obliviscor necessitudo, et nuncupo dignus haeres: Prorsus quasi nefas sum alius quam vir fortis succedo vir fortis.

Epicurus voluptas magnum aestimo: sed sapiens voluptas minimum facio.

Vir fortis jactans verbum parvum pendo: et mina nihilum facio.

Non is teruncus facio: non nauci augur habeo:

augur a rush ; I value you more than them all.

That fellow did not value me a penny ; he went off, nor did he value a pin what I said.

Cassius likewise plighted his own faith, which Jugurtha valued no less than the publick's.

Every evil is as great as we rate it ; a wise man however values reputation more than life itself.

It is time to give over the battle. I only am carried against Pallas.

I am not glad of past calamities. I am pained in mind. He abhors me. He forgets troubles.

I was disappointed of the discourse. He envies Cicer. Neither does he grudge the long oaten pipe. Abstain from quarrels. Discontinue complaints.

tu plus quam omnis ille puto.

Iste homo non unus as ego æstimo : abeo, neque qui dico floccus existimo.

Cassius quoque fides suus interpono, qui Jugurtha non minus quam publicus duco.

Uniusquisque malum sum tantum quantum ille taxo ; sapiens tamen æstimo fama plus quam vita ipse.

Tempus desisto pugna ; solus ego in Pallas feror.

Nec vetus lætor malum. Discrutior animus. Fastidio ego. Decipior labor.

Fallor sermo. Invideo Cicer. Nec longus invideo avena. Abstineo ira. Desino querela.

CHAP. XXIII.

Sum and *suppetit*, when used for *habeo*, govern the Dative.

The compounds of *sum*, in general, except *possum* govern a Dative.

Sum, *do*, *dono*, *verto*, *habeo*, *tribuo*, *mitto*, *puto*, *relinquo*, &c. may elegantly govern two Dative Cases; one of *the person* to whom the thing happens, and the other of *the design* to which the thing refers.

VIRTUE is for an ornament to all persons; and no part of beauty is wanting to them that are endued with it.

The wall of a city is for a defence; but the courage of the inhabitants is the strongest bulwark.

Those men, who have the most money, obtain the greatest honour among men.

A valiant and faithful subject is a defence to his prince; he does not resist him, but obeys his commands, and prefers his prince's safety before his own life.

A broad and deep trench is a security to an army; but neither walls nor valour are able to be a preservation to those, whose lives are come to their appointed end.

Cæsar,

VIRTUS sum ornamentum omnis, et pars nullus pulchritudo desum ille, qui sum præditus is.

Murus urbs sum tutamen; sed fortitudo incolæ sum munimen fortis.

Is, qui plurimus pecunia sum, consequor honor magnus inter homo.

Subditus magnanimus et pius sum tutamen princeps suus; non repugno ille, sed obtempero mandatum is, et antefero incolumitas princeps vita suus.

Vallum latus et profundus sum tutamen exercitus; sed nec murus nec fortitudo possum sum præsidium ille, qui vita pervenio ad finis præstitutus.

Cæsar,

Cæsar, the dictator, rivalled the greatest orators, and Augustus had a ready and fluent eloquence.

Thou mayest rest with us upon the green grass; we have mellow apples, soft chesnuts, and plenty of curdled milk.

Conon, when he heard that his country was invaded, did not enquire where he might live safely; but from whence he might bring relief to his countrymen.

The loss, however, of the human race, was matter of grief to all the gods; and they asked what would be the appearance of the earth destitute of mortals.

The vine is an ornament to the trees, grapes are an ornament to the vines, bulls to the flocks, and growing corn to the fertile fields.

Micipsa imagined, that Jugurtha would be an honour to his kingdom, and thought it a glory to himself, that he was called the friend and ally of the Roman people.

The complainers charged it as a crime against Gallius, that he had prepared poison; and who is it, that would not have imputed it to him as a fault?

The gentlemen strut in state before your noses, and boast of their triumphs, just as if they reckoned them an

H honour

Cæsar, dictator, sum æmulus summus orator, et Augustus promptus ac profluens eloquentia.

Tu possis requiesco ego cum super viridis frons; sum ego mitis pomum, mollis castanea, et pressus copia lac.

Conon, cum audio patria obsideo, non quaero ubi ipse vivo tuto; sed unde sum praesidium civis suus.

Factura, tamen, humanus genus, sum dolor omnis superi; et rogo, qui sum forma terra mortalis orbis?

Vitis sum decus arbor, uva sum decus vitis, taurus grex, et seges pinguis arvom.

Micipsa existimo Jugurtha forem gloria regnum suus, et duco sui gloria, sui voco amicus et socius populus Romanus.

Accusator do crimen Gallius, is paro venenum; et quis sum, qui non verito is vitium?

Hic vir incedo per os vester, et ostento suus triumphus, perinde quasi habeo

honour to them, and not rapine.

The girl was left to this woman as a pledge for the money; but it is charged upon you as laziness, that you write so few letters to your friends.

The nation of the Catti have robust bodies, compact limbs, a stern countenance, great vigour of mind, a great deal of sense and address; they confide more in their general than in their army; over the blood and spoils of an enemy they uncover their face, and boast, that they are then worthy of their country and their parents.

I come now to Cicero, who had the same contest with his contemporaries, that I have with you; for they admired the ancients, he preferred the eloquence of his own times.

The Macedonians had perpetual wars with the Thracians and Illyrians; the latter despised the infancy of the Macedonian king, and invaded the Macedonians; who, being beaten, brought out their king, and placed him behind their army in his cradle, and then renewed the dispute more briskly.

As soon as Philip, king of Macedonia, entered upon the government, all people had great hopes of him, because of his parts, and because of the old oracles of Macedonia, which

habeo is honor sui, ac non præda.

Adolescentula relinquo hic mulier arrhabo pro argentum; sed tribuo tu ignavia, quod scribo tam rarus litera ad amicus.

Gens Catti sum durus corpus, strictus artus, minax vultus, magnus vigor animus, multum ratio ac solertia; repono plus in dux quam in exercitus; super sanguis et spoliium hostis revelo facies, et fero sui sum tum dignus patria et parens.

Nunc ad Cicero venis, qui idem pugna sum cum æqualis suus, qui ego sum tucum; ille enim antiquas miror, ipse suus tempus eloquentia antepono.

Macedo sum assiduus bellum cum Thraces et Illyrii; posterior contemno infantia Macedonicus rex, et invado Macedo; qui, pulsus, profero rex suus, et pono pone acies in cunæ, et tum repeto certamen acriter.

Ut Philippus, rex Macedonia, ingredior imperium, omnis sum magnus spes de ille, propter ipse ingenium, et propter vetus fatum Macedonia, qui cano

which had given out, that the state of Macedonia should be very flourishing under one of the sons of Amyntas.

After this Alexander orders himself to be adored, not saluted. Callisthines was the most violent among the recusants; which thing brought ruin both on him, and on many great men of Macedonia; for they were all put to death under pretence of a plot.

He ordered Marcus Claudius, the proconsul, to retain a sufficient garrison at Nola, and send away the rest of the soldiers, that they might not be a burden to their allies, and a charge to the government.

cano status Macedonia sum florens sub unus filius Amyntas.

Deinde Alexander jubeo sui adoro, non salutor. Callisthines sum acer inter recusans; qui res sum exitium et ille, et multus princeps Macedonia; siquidem omnis interficio sub species insidia.

Jubeo Marcus Claudius, proconsul, retineo idoneus praesidium ad Nola, et dimitto caeter miles, ne sum onus socius, et sumptus respública.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Verbs, compounded with *satis, bene* and *male*, govern the Dative.

Verbs, compounded with *præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, inter, in* and *super*, govern a Dative of the Noun, affected by the Preposition.

The Noun, or Pronoun, to which, or for which, any thing is done, is governed by the Verb, in the Dative.

THAT man is of a base and ignoble spirit, that only lives for himself, and not for his friends; for we were born not for ourselves only; but for the public good.

ILLE sum animus vilis et ignobilis, qui solum vivo sui, et non amicus; non nascor ego solum, sed bonus publicus.

The

Impius

The wicked lay snares for those that are more righteous than they; but God careth for his servants, and preserveth their lives to them.

The sun shines indiscriminately upon the just and unjust.

I prefer virtue before the most fine gold: For it is much better.

Severe masters impose hard tasks on their scholars, and never interpose their assistance among them.

Vice creepeth upon men under the name of virtue: For covetousness would be called frugality, and prodigality taketh to itself the name of bounty; pride calls itself neatness; revenge seems like greatness of spirit, and cruelty exerciseth its bitterness under shew of courage.

Open not thy ears to flatterers: For fools open their ears to flatterers and shut them to truth.

A good name exceeds riches. It is the part of a wise man to prefer virtue to pleasure.

It is the part of a brave man to prefer his country before his life.

Prefer virtue before riches, friendship before money, and profitable things to pleasant.

Fame delights to add false things to true. A wise man accommodates himself to nature.

Impius struo laqueum ille, qui sum justus fui: Sed Deus curo servus suus. et conseruo ille vita.

Sol affulgeo indiscriminatim justus et injustus.

Antefero virtus aurum purus: Sum enim multo bonus.

Magister severus impono pensum difficilis discipulus suus, et nunquam interpono auxilium suus ille.

Vitium subrepto homo nomen virtus: Avaritia enim volo voco frugalitas, et prodigalitas arrogo sui nomen beneficentia; superbia voco sui elegantia: vindicta videor similis magnanimitas, et crudelitas exerceo acerbitas suus sub species fortitudo.

Ne aperto auris assentator: Stultus enim patefacio assentator, et claudo veritas.

Existimatio bonus praefero divitiarum. Sum sapiens praeponeo virtus voluptas.

Sum vir fortis praefero patriam vitam.

Praefero virtus divitiarum, amicitia pecunia, et utilis jucundus.

Fama gaudeo addo falsus verus. Sapiens ut commodo sui natura. Cogito.

ture. Consider, that a robber and an enemy may put a sword to your throat.

A wise man does his endeavour, that his works may agree with his words.

They began by little and little to withdraw themselves from the fight.

The enemy came up to the camp. Do not sink under thy burden. A good magistrate prefers the publick good to his own.

One day well spent is to be preferred before a sinning immortality.

Narbonensis Gallia is to be put after none of the provinces. Macedonia fell to Antipater.

It is not the part of a gallant man to expose himself to danger without cause.

It is a very wicked thing to make war upon one's own country.

The covetous man gapes after riches.

When Alexander went to the Persian war, he slew all his stepmother's relations, whom Philip had raised to any high post of honour, and had set over the cities and districts of Macedonia.

Alexander divided among his friends all his patrimony in Macedonia and Europe, saying, that Asia was sufficient for him.

Elissa put the king's servants with all their wealth on board,

Cogito, latro et hostis possum admoveo gladius jugulum tuus.

Sapiens do opera, ut opus concordo verbum.

Cæpi paulatim subtrahō sui pugna.

Hostis succedo castra. Ne succumbo onus. Bonus magistratus antepono communis utilitas suus.

Unus dies bene actus sum anteponendus peccans immortalitas.

Narbonensis Gallia postponendus nullus provincia. Macedonia obvenio Antipater.

Non sum magnanimus vir offero sui periculum sine causa.

Sum nefarius impono bellum patria.

Avarus inhio divitiæ.

Cum Alexander proficiscor ad Persicus bellum, interficio omnis noverca cognitus, qui Philippus proveho in excelsior locus dignitas, et præficio urbs et provincia Macedonia.

Alexander divido omnis patrimonium suus in Macedonia et Europa inter amicus, dicens Asia sufficiens sui.

Elissa impono rex minister cum omnis opus navis.

and being launched out into the main, makes them throw bags full of sand into the sea, pretending it to be Acerbas's wealth, and tells them, that she had long since wished for death, but that cruel torments and dreadful punishments hung over them, who had withdrawn Acerbas's wealth from the tyrant's avarice.

Turnus, king of the Rutuli, to whom Lavinia, Latinus's daughter, had been contracted before Æneas's coming into Italy, took it ill that a foreigner was preferred before him, made war upon Æneas and Latinus; but the Aborigines and Trojans lost their king Latinus.

Alexander took this fact of Lyfimachus so ill, that he ordered him to be exposed to a very fierce lion. But as the lion, at the sight of him, made at him, Lyfimachus thrust his hand, wrapped in his gown, into the lion's mouth, got hold of his tongue and killed him.

Because publick rites were performed by the kings themselves, that there might be no want of kings any where, they constituted a priest, who was called *rex*; but subjected that office to the high priest, lest honour added to the name should prejudice their liberty, of which they had a great care.

navis, et proventus in altum, compello dejicio sacculus plenus arena in mare, simulans sum opes Acerbas, et dico ille sua olim opto mors, sed acerbus cruciatus et dirus supplicium immineo illo, qui subtraho Acerbas opes tyrannus avaritia.

Turnus, rex Rutulus, qui Lavinia, Latinus filia, pactus sum ante Æneas adventus in Italia, ægre patior advena præfero sui, infero bellum Æneas et Latinus; sed Aborigines et Trojannus amitto dux meus Latinus.

Alexander fero hic factum Lyfimachus adeo ægre, ut jubeo is objicio ferox leo. Sed cum leo ad conspectus is facio impetus, Lyfimachus immergo manus, involutus amictus, os leo, arripio lingua, et exanimo is.

Quia quidam publicis sacrum factito per rex ipse, necubi sum desiderium rex, creo sacrificulus, qui voco rex; sed sub jicio is sacerdotium pontifex; ne honor additus nomen, afficio libertas, qui sum primus cura.

An honest man endeavours to satisfy his creditors, to act well for the commonwealth, which is a fine thing; he endeavours also to speak well of good men, to revile nobody, and to do an ill turn to none. God often blesses such a man, which he does when he gives him prosperity, enlarges his fortunes, and shows him favour.

Parents often outlive their children; and as some men have a weakness of judgment, and others want prudence, an old man of this sort ought to be present at publick deliberations, and have the charge of the thing to be done: Not that he may have it in his power to hurt any one, but that he may be able to do good to many; and God sometimes favours such an undertaking.

The thing pleased me much; for the young man had resolved to rest in our opinion, and adhere to virtue. Fortune, therefore, smiled upon him, and favoured his first attempt; and great courage was added to his men, who rode up to the very gates of the enemy.

The enemy threw themselves into the river, and endeavoured to swim to land. Our general returned victorious with twelve serjeants who attended him, and all rose up before him, as he came into his tent, where he sat down

Probus vir conor satisfacio creditor, et benefacio respublica, qui sum pudcher; conor quoque benedico bonus homo, maledico nemo, et malfacio nihil. Deus saepe benedico talis, qui facio cum do. prosper, augeo bonum, faveoque.

Parentis saepe supervivens liberi; et ut quidam homo infans imbecillitas judicium, et alius desum prudentia, senex ejusmodi debeo intersum publicus consilium, et praesum res faciendus: Non ut possum obsum quivis, sed ut possum profum multus; et Deus nonnunquam alium talis inceptum.

Res arrideo ego valde; nam adolescens statuo acquiesco sententia noster, et adhæreo virtus. Portuna, igitur, affulgeo ille, et aspiro primus labor; et ingens animus accido miles, qui adequito ipse porta inimicus.

Hostis projectio sui instuvius, et conor adno terra. Noster dux redeo victor cum duodecim lictor, qui appareo is, et omnis assurgo is, veniens in tabernaculum, ubi accumba spuda. Primores assideo ille,

to a feast. The grandees sat by him, and six boys waited at table.

Virtue, which is always consistent with itself, excels all other things, and the endowments of mind excel strength of body; but they often beget pride. There was a comedian in Greece of a very celebrated character, with whom I lived a long time, who far excelled most actors and musicians: He used to boast and say, let the boys play with their equals, and sing to themselves and the Muses.

This villain mocks and insults all good men; he is said never to have groaned nor wept at the death of a friend; but he gapes after gain and sleeps on his bags of money; he obstinately persists in, and pursues his former courses, though danger seems to hang and hover over him; for a pain has lately settled in his feet, which obliges him to lean on a staff, as a soldier leans on a spear, or as a house leans on pillars.

There was an alliance for a long time betwixt this people and their neighbours; a war, however, at last broke out between them; they joined battle in a valley full of ferns, which use to grow in neglected fields: At first the sun was shining and the gold glittered on their bright armour; many

were

ille, et sex puer adstantes sa.

Virtus, qui semper consono sui, anteo omnis altius res, et dos animus antecello vires corpus at saepe gigno superbia. Sum histrio in Gracia, celebrer fama, qui diu convivio, qui longe antesto plerique actor et catharædius: Soleo glorior et dico, puer colludo par, et concino sui et musa.

Hic scelestus illudo et insulto omnis bonus; disonunquam ingemo aut ilachrimo mors amicus; sed inhio lucrum, et indormio faccus pecunia; pertinaciter insto, et inhaero prior vestigium, etiamsi periculum video impendo et immineo is; nam dolor nuper infideo pes, qui cogo is innitor bacculum, ut miles infisto hasta, aut ut tectum incumbo columna.

Amicitia diu intercedo hic populus cum finitimus; bellum, tamen tandem exorior inter is; committo praelium in vallicis plenus flix, qui solleo innascor neglectus ager: Primo sol splendeo, et aurum intermico fulgens arma, multus interficia utrinque

were slain on both sides, who were all buried in pits, that lay betwixt the hills, and more would have fallen, had not night come on during the time of the battle.

The lot, that has fallen to men, is mortal : Mortality occurs, nay often occurs to our thought ; and all men struggle against death in vain ; but yet vices creep in upon us ; wickedness stands in the way of piety, one decries and depreciates the merits of another ; few withstand the allurements of pleasure, and nobody is disposed to die for his country.

Mercury is said to preside over gain ; but a fair reputation is better than riches. Masters ought and use to lead the way to their scholars, and the boy is worthy of honour, who outshines his ancestors or outstrips his contemporaries. Providence overrules human devices, and certain signs sometimes go before certain events.

Wave succeeds wave, grief comes in the midst of joy, old age and poverty steal upon you ; but do not sink under the burden ; for your farm, that lies under the hill, is far better than its rent, and will find a purchaser ; and as you are content with little, if but a small part of the price shall be lost to you, you will
be

*trinque, qui omnis sepeliet
in foveo qui interjacet
mons, et plus cado, ne
nox intervenio pralium.*

*Sors, qui obvenio homo,
sum mortalis : Mortali-
tas occurro, imo occurro,
animus ; et omnis oblac-
tor mors frustra ; at-
tamen vitium obrepto ego,
scelus, obsto pietas, alter
obstrepto et detracto laus,
alter ; pauci obfesto blan-
ditia voluptas, et nemo
sum paratus occumbomors
pro patria.*

*Mercurius dico presideo
lacrum ; sed bonus existo
matio preesto divitias
Preceptor debeo et solus
praeo discipulus, et puer
sum dignus honor, qui
praeluceo majores, aut
antecello aequalis. Pro-
videntia praevalto huma-
nus consilium, et certus
signum interdum praecur-
ro certus res.*

*Unda succedo unda,
luctus supervenio letitiam,
senectus et paupertas sub-
repto tu ; sed ne succumbo
onus ; nam ager tuus, qui
subjaceo mons, longe sum
percurro vertigal, et in-
venio emptor ; et cum sum,
contentus parvum, si mo-
do exiguus pars pretium
superfesto, tu sum ditior as-
narum.*

be richer than a covetous man, whom the wealth of Cræsus would not satisfy. *varus, qui opes Cræsus non sufficio.*

C H A P. XXV.

Verbs that signify to Profit and Disprofit, Please and Displease, Obey, Favour, Help, Hurt, Resist, Promise, Spare, Approach Nigh, Tell, Command, Upbraid, to be Angry with, Meet, Indulge, Flatter and Persuade, govern the Dative.

THE man, that only pleaseth himself, doth not profit himself, but injureth his own honour and felicity; because he displeaseth his Creator, that calleth his servants to self denial.

A merciful king pardoneth his rebellious subjects: If they return him not due thanks, but resist his power again, they are most ungrateful; and though he spared them for their first crime, he will not encourage them in their ingratitude.

God is angry with the wicked every day, and threateneth them with most dreadful torments.

They, who strongly resist their own evil inclinations, obey God.

It is the part of a wise man to please God, to do good to men, to take care of himself,

QUI solum placeo sui, non profum sui, sed noceo honor suus et felicitas; quia displiceo Creator suus, qui voco servus suus ad abnegatio sui.

Rex misericors ignosce subditus suus rebellis: Si non ago gratia debitus ille, sed repugno potestas is denuo, sum ingratus; et quanquam parco ille ob crimen primus, non indulgeo ingratitude ille.

Deus quotidie irascor impius, et minor dirus cruciatus ille.

Qui repugno propensio suus pravus fortiter, obtempero Deus.

Sum sapiens placeo Deus, proficio homo, caveo sui, prospicio salus suus, mutua

to

mutua

to provide for his own safety, to be concerned for his friends and study their interest, to do harm to none, to displease nobody, neither to hurt the miserable, nor lay snares for the innocent.

A good man favours the good and rejoiceth with them upon any happy event; he is always disposed to spare the vanquished, and forgive what is past; he neither entertains resentment nor flatters any one; he knows, that those who detract from good men, derogate from themselves; he therefore envies nobody, but zealously imitates the most worthy.

It is the property of a generous man to aid the poor, to assist the needy, to succour the distressed, to heal their wounds, to patronize the orphans, to help his countrymen, to study their advantage, to pray to God, that he would succeed his endeavours; whilst the covetous man flatters and caresses the rich, and applauds himself, when he looks at his money in his chest.

God hath commanded us to rule our lusts, to govern our spirit, to listen to his word, to obey his admonitions, to be subject to his laws, to be submissive to parents, to comply with their will, to serve and wait upon them, and obey their orders, and not to be a slave to passion.

*mutuo amicus et consulo
utilitas, officio nullus, dis-
pliceo nemo, neque nocceo
miser, neque infidior in-
nocuus.*

*Bonus faveo bonus, et
gratulor is de aliquis res
felix; semper paratus
sum parco victus, et ig-
nosco præteritus; neque
indulgeo ira, neque adu-
lor quisquam; nosco is,
qui detraho bonus, dero-
go sui; ideo invideo ne-
mo, sed æmulor dignus.*

*Sum generosus auxilior
pauper, subvenio inops,
succurro miser, medeor
vulnus, patrocinator orbis
parens, opitulor civis,
studeo commodum, et sup-
plicor Deus, ut annuo au-
sum; dum avarus assen-
tor et blandior dives, et
plaudor sui; cum contem-
plor nummus in arca.*

*Deus præcipio ego ut
impero cupiditas, moderor
animus, ausculto verbum
is, pareo monitum, obedio
lex, obtempero parens, ob-
secundo voluntas is, fa-
mulor et ministro ille, et
obsequor imperium, neque
servio iracunda.*

A

Christianus

6 A NEW INTRODUCTION 70

A christian ought to oppose vicious pleasure, to struggle against, and withstand the beginnings of anger, to resist evil, to oppose the corrupt practices of those, who despise virtue and religion, and not to be a slave to lust, nor humor wicked men.

The general was angry and enraged at the soldiers, he threatened the standard bearer, he threatened the runaways; but as he durst not depend on the courage of his men, he resolved to retreat and trust to the night and the darkness. Though at first he did not believe the things, that were said concerning the enemy, yet now he began to give up his affairs as lost, and despair of safety.

I cannot restrain my tongue says the gentleman to his companion; the sun shines on the wicked, and few are wise for themselves. I bewail the misfortunes of the unhappy young lady; she excelled all the girls of the east, she was taken up with the liberal sciences, and was always intent upon philosophy.

Many young men courted this girl, and presents sent by many lovers were disdained by her; at length, however, she yielded to the gentle commands of her parents, and married a Roman knight: But the event did not answer people's expectations, he was

Christianus debet repugno vitiosus voluptas, reluctor et obsto principium ira, resisto malum, adverfor pravus mos is, qui contemno virtus et religio, neque inservio cupiditas, neque morigeror malus homo.

Dux succenseo et irascor miles, minor signifer, comminor fugiens; sed cum non audeo confido virtus miles, statuo recedo, et fido nox et tenebræ. Quamvis primo non credo is, qui narro de hostis, tamen nunc capi disfidores suos, et despero salus.

Nam possum tempero lingua, aio vir comes; sol luceo sceleratus, et pauci sapio sui. Daleo casus infelix virgo; excello omnis puella oriens, operor liberalis studium, et semper vaco philosophia.

Multus juvenis peto hac puella, et munus missus a multus procus sordedo ille; tandem, tamen, cado lenis imperium patrens, et nubo Romanus eques: Sed res non respondeo homo opinio, sum durus maritus, et miser renuncio

a bad husband, and the poor creature has bid adieu to life; my voice clings to my jaws.

So great a madness had seized their cruel minds, that they did not spare the age, which even enemies would have spared; and carried on a destructive war against their children, and children's mothers for whom wars used to be undertaken. So great was the havock, that the gods seem to have agreed together with men, for the destruction of the parricides.

Polycletus, a man terrible to our own soldiers, is sent into Britain; but he was an object of derision to the enemy, amongst whom the power of freedmen was not yet known, and they wondered, that an army should obey a slave.

The christian religion not only commands us to help our friends, but to relieve those, that are our enemies: For so we shall make them our friends, and shall promote love, kindness, peace and good will among men; which things please God.

The Parthians were formerly the most obscure among the people of the East. When the empire of Asia was transferred from the Medes to the Persians, they were a prey to their conquerors; they were finally subject to the Macedonians, that it may seem strange to any one that they arrived at

I

such

renuncio vita; vox fauce hæreo.

Tantus rabies invado ferus animus, ut non parco ætas, qui etiam hostis parco; geroque internecinus bellum cum liberi, liberique mater, pro qui bellum solo suscipio. Tantus strages sum, ut deus videor consentio pariter cum homo in exitium parricida.

Polycletus, vir terribilis noster miles, mitto in Britannia; sed sum irrisus hostis, apud qui potentia libertus nondum cognosco, mirorque quod exercitus obedio servitium.

Christianus religio non modo præcipio ego opitulor amicus, sed succurro is, qui sum inimicus ego: Sic enim reddo is amicus, et promoveo amor, benignitas, pax, et benevolentia inter homo: qui placeo Deus.

Parthi sum olim obscurus inter populus Oriens. Cum imperium Asia transfero a Medi ad Persa, sum præda victor; servio postremo Macedones, ut videor mirus, quivis is proveho ad tantus felicitas,
ut

Such a flourishing condition, as now to command those nations, which they formerly served.

He that resisteth his own evil inclinations, obeyeth God, and deserveth greater praise than the general, who vanquisheth mighty armies, and taketh the strongest cities, but serveth his passions, which he cannot govern.

Taken with the sweetness of that power, you suffer any wickedness to lurk under it. Let them say the same things, which they bawl out here, in the camp, and amongst the soldiers; and let them corrupt our armies, and not suffer them to obey their commanders; since this is, at the last, the liberty of Rome, not to reverence the senate, the magistrates, nor the laws.

The Lacedemonians, after the manner of mankind, the more they have, the more they desire: For, not content with the accession of the Athenian powers, they began to affect the empire of all Asia the greater part of which was subject to the Persians.

King Eumenes met the Romans with aid, and a little after a battle was fought with Antiochus: A Roman legion was beaten, in the right wing, and fled to the camp; but M. Æmilius, a tribune of the soldiers, who had been left for the security of it, commands his

ut nunc impero is gens, qui olim servio.

Qui repugno suus malus affectus, obectio Deus, et mereor magnus laus quam dux, qui fundo magnus copia, et expugno munitus urbs, sed servio suus. cupiditas, qui non possam moderor.

Captus dulcedo is potestas, sino quilibet scelus lateo sub is. Dico idem, qui vociferor hic, in castra, et apud miles; et corrumpto exercitus, nec patioris paroo dux; quoniam is demum sum libertas Roma, non revereor sanatus, magistratus, nec non lex.

Lacedemonii, de mos genus humanus, quod plus habeo, id plus cupio: Nam non contentus accessio opes Atheniensis, cepti affecto imperium totus Asia, qui magnus pars pareo Persa.

Rex Eumenes occurro Romanus cum auxilium, et paulo post pratum committo cum Antiochus: Romanus legio pello in dexterio cornu, et fugio ad castra; sed M. Æmilius tribunus miles qui relinquo ad tutela is, impero

his soldiers to take arms, and threaten the fugitives.

Hiero was descended of Hierocles; his very education was ominous of his future grandeur; he had a famous beauty of body; he was courtly in his address, just in his business, moderate in command, that there seemed nothing at all wanting to him, suitable for a king, but a kingdom.

That no misery might be wanting to the most honourable families, he obliges their wives and daughters to marry their slaves, that he might render them more faithful to himself, and more violent against their masters. But such dismal matches were more grievous to the matrons, than sudden death.

A great part of men are not angry with the faults, but the offenders. It is the part of a madman to be angry with dumb animals.

Believe not any one more than thyself of thyself. It is not safe to believe fame: She is often a liar and feigns many things. It is the property of a wife man to govern his tongue.

Wise men command their desires, which others serve. The wicked favour the wicked, and the good favour the good. Forgive others many things, thyself nothing. He is not to be accounted a free man,

pero miles capio arma, et minor fugiens.

Hierogigno Hierocles: ipse educatio sum prænunciatus futurus majestas; sum is insignis pulchritudo corpus; sum blandus in colloquium, justus in negotium, moderatus in imperium, ut nihil prorsus videor desum is regium, præter regnum.

Ne quid malum desum honestus domus, compello uxor is filiaque nubo servus suus, ut reddo is fidus sui; et infestus dominus. Sed tam lugubris nuptiæ sum gravis matrona repentinus funus.

Magnus pars homo, non irascor peccatum, sed peccans. Sum demens irascor mutus animal.

Ne credo qui plus quam tu de tu. Non sum tutus credo fama: Is sum sæpe mendax, et fingo plurimus. Sum sapiens moderor lingua.

Sapiens impero cupiditas, qui alius servio. Improbus faveo improbus, et bonus faveo bonus. Ignosco alius multus, tu nihil. Non sum habendus liber, qui obedi cupiditas.
Nema

man, who obeys his lusts. No man can serve pleasures and virtue together.

Annibal's advice pleased king Antiochus; wherefore one of Annibal's companions is sent into Africa, to the Carthaginians, to encourage them to the war, and tells them that Antiochus would come presently with an army; that nothing was wanting but the countenance of the Carthaginians.

It is a dreadful thing to displease God, the Creator of all things, who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell, and has threatened those with eternal torments, who refuse to obey his laws. Let us, therefore, endeavour to please him, that we may avoid that dreadful punishment.

Honesty hurts no man; but knavery, though it may seem to profit a man, is very pernicious to a man's credit, which all wise men value more than money; and very often to his estate and life too, which fools value more than all things else.

All ages will abhor the cruelty of the Triumviri, Mark Antony, Cæsar Octavianus, and Lepidus, who proscribed whom they pleased, and pitied none, who had estates, and disliked as they thought, their proceedings. He, that was so inhuman, did not deserve the empire of the world.

When

Nemo possum servio voluptas et virtus simul.

Annibal consilium placeo rex Antiochus; quare unus comes Annibal mitte in Africa ad Carthaginensibus, ut hortor is ad bellum, et nuncio ille, Antiochus mox venio cum exercitus; nihil desum nisi animus Carthaginensibus.

Horrendus sum displiceo Deus, Conditor omnis, qui possum perdo anima et corpus infernum, et minor is æternus supplicium, qui recuso pareo lex suus. Conor, igitur placeo ille, ut effugio ille horrendus supplicium.

Probitas noteo nemo; sed improbitas, etsi videor profum homo; sum perniciosus estimatio homo, qui omnis sapiens æstimo plus quam pecunia, et sæpissime res et vita etiam, qui stultius facio plus quam alius omnis.

Omnis sæculum detestor crudelitas Triumviri, Marcus Antonius, Cæsar Octavianus, et Lepidus, qui proscribo qui placeo ille, et misereor nullus, qui habeo opes, et improbo, ut credo, factum suus, Qui sum tam inhumanus hæud misereor imperium mundus. Cum

When Alexander returned from the East, the Ambassadors of the Carthaginians and other cities of Africa, Spain, Sicily, Gaul and Sardinia, waited for his return at Babylon. The terror of his name had so possessed the whole world, that all nations flattered him as a king designed for them.

Go, says Romulus to Julius Proculus, tell the Romans, that the gods will have it so, that my Rome be the head of the world. Wherefore let them mind military affairs. Let them know and deliver it so to posterity, that no human power shall be able to resist the Roman arms.

It was no hard thing for Leonidas to persuade his men, who were resolved to die. Wherefore they immediately take arms, and six hundred men break into the camp of five hundred thousand, and seek for the king's pavilion, which they could not find. They wandered victorious through the camp, and at last died among heaps of the slain enemies.

At Croton there were great animosities betwixt the nobility and the commons. For the same distemper had seized all the cities of Italy, that the common people dissented from the nobility; the senate favoured the Romans; and the commons, the Carthaginians,

Cum Alexander reverter ab Oriens, legatus Carthaginienfis et reliquus civitas Africa, Hispania, Sicilia, Gallia et Sardinia, operior adventus is apud Babylon. Terror is nomen adeo invado totus orbis, ut cunctus gens adolor is velut rex destinatus sui.

Abeo, inquam Romulus: Julius Proculus, nuncio Romanus, celestis volo, ut meus Roma sum caput terrarum orbis. Proinde colo militaris. Scio et trado posteris, nullus opes humanus possum resistere Romanus arma.

Non sum difficilis Leonidas persuadeo suis miles, qui decerno morior. Quare statim capio arma: et sexcenti vir inrumpe castra quingenti mille, et peto rex praetorium, qui non possum invenio. Vagor victor per castra, et tandem occido inter accervus stratus hostis.

Apud Croton magnus sum, certamen inter princeps et plebs. Nam idem morbus invado omnis civitas Italia, ut plebs dissentio ab optimates: Senatus faveo Romanus; et plebs, Panni. Perfuga nuncio.

A deserter carried the news of this disagreement to the Brutii.

C H A P. XXVI.

Verbs of Comparing, Declaring, Giving, Forgiving, Promising, Paying, Envyng, Shewing, Trusting, Distrusting, Restoring, Threatning, Telling, Owing, and Taking Away, govern the Dative of *the Person*, and Accusative of *the Thing*.

IF the longest life should be compared with eternity, it is very short; if we should compare the most happy condition in this world, with heaven, it is miserable, and not worthy of our desires.

If we should compare the number of good and virtuous persons with the multitude of the wicked, it would be very small.

We often compare small things with great.

None of all the Romans were to be compared to Cato for virtue.

He took away my estate, and now he desires to take my life from me.

Fortune is very rightly compared with the wind, to which it is very like.

*SI vita longus comparo
aeternitas, sum brevis;
se fors felix in mundus
hic comparo calum, sum
miser, et non dignus de-
siderium nostrum.*

*Si comparo numerus
bonus et pius multitudo
impium, sum perexiguus.*

*Sæpe confero parvum
magnus.*

*Nemo Romanus sum
comparandus Cato ob vir-
tus.*

*Eripio bona, et nunc
gestio eripio vita ego.*

*Fortuna rectissime com-
paro ventus, qui sum simi-
lis.*

God

Deus

God hath given nothing to man, which can be compared to reason and wisdom.

The cruelty of his mother affrighted Alexander, king of Egypt so much, that he left her, preferring a secure and safe life before a kingdom. But Cleopatra fearing lest Cyzenicus should assist her eldest son Ptolemy, sent aid to Grypus, and gave Selene in marriage to the enemy her former husband.

When Eumenes understood these things, he called his soldiers together, and first he gave them thanks, that none was found who preferred the hopes of a bloody reward to the obligation of his oath; then he cunningly subjoins, that he had forged those letters, that he might try their affections.

A great many other famous things were recorded of queen Semiramis: For not being content to defend to the bounds of her kingdom, she added Æthiopia to her empire, and made war upon India, whither nobody ever came besides her and Alexander the great.

Cæsar said to the Helvetian ambassadors, that though those things were so, yet if they would give him pledges, that he might see, that they would do those things, which they promised, and would satisfy the Ædui for the injuries they

Deus da nihil homo, qui possum comparo ratio et sapientia.

Crudelitas mater fuit terreo Alexander rex Ægyptus adeo, ut relinqueret, anteponebat securus et tutus vita regnum. Sed Cleopatra timens ne Cyzenicus auxilior major filius Ptolemæus, mitto auxilium. Grypus, et do Selene in matrimonium hostis prior maritus.

Cum Eumenes cognoscebat hic, convoco miles, et primo ago is gratia, quod nemo inventio, qui anteponebat spes cruentus præmium fides sacramentum: tum callide subnecto sui confingo hæc epistola, ut exprior animus suos.

Multus alius præclarus prodo regina Semiramis: Siquidem non contentus tueor terminus regnum, adjicio Æthiopia imperium, et bellum profero in India, quo præter ille et Alexander Magnus nemo intro.

Cæsar dico Helvetius legatus, quum is ita sum, tamen si do obses sui, uti intelligo is facio is, qui polliceo, et satisfacio Ædui de injuria, qui infero ipse fociusque, et Allobrogis.

they had done them and their allies, and the Allobroges likewise, that he would make peace with them.

Cambyfes succeeded Cyrus. He added Egypt to the empire of his father; but being offended at the superstitions of the Egyptians, he ordered the temples of Apis, and the other gods to be pulled down. Afterwards he added parricide to his sacrilege: For it was hard for him to spare his relations, who had not spared the gods.

When he died, he left the guardianship of his sons to a slave of approved fidelity, and so great was the respect for his memory among the people, that they chose rather to obey a slave, than forsake the king's son; and the great men of the kingdom, forgetting their honour, suffered the government to be managed by a slave.

When Bacchus led his army to India, he delivered the kingdom of Thebes to Nifus, his foster father. But after Bacchus was returned from thence, Nifus refused to restore the kingdom to him.

God's prophets have foretold many wonderful things to the world; they have been sent to put sinners in mind of eternal happiness, and shew all men the way to it.

Seeing you have promised so often, and not performed,

*Allobroges item, sui facio
pax cum is.*

*Cambyfes succedo. Cy-
rus. Adjicio Egyptus
imperium pater; sed irat-
us superstitio Egyptus,
jubeo ædes Apis, cæterque
deus, eruo. Postea addo
parricidium sacrilegium:
Nam sum difficitis is par-
to suus cognatus, qui non
parco deus.*

*Cum decedo; relinquo
tutela filius servus specta-
tus fides; et tantus sum
amor memoria is apud
omnis; ut malo pario
servus quam defero rex
filius; et princeps civitas
oblitus dignitas suus, pa-
rior regnum administro
per servus.*

*Cum Liber duco exerci-
tus in India, trado potes-
tas regnum Thebanus
Nifus, nutriculus suus.
Sed postea quam inde re-
vertor Liber, Nifus nego
restituo regnum is.*

*Vates divinus prænun-
cio multus mirus mundus;
mitto ut admonco peccator
beatitudo æternus, et ut
monstro omnis via ad is.*

*Cum toties promitto et
præsto nihil, posthac non
credo.*

I shall not believe you again : You are not worthy of credit. Let nobody commit secrets to his trust, who promises secrecy, and immediately forgets his promise.

A master forgiveth scholars their neglect : But if he should always forgive them, they would, at length, become bold and incapable of amendment.

The covetous man compares great things with small, and disregards every thing in comparison with money. Old men compare themselves with old men, and prefer retirement to business : But boys generally postpone serious matters to diversion.

Fools compare themselves with great men, and prefer pleasure to virtue ; But wise men put themselves on a level with their inferiors, and prefer friendship to money ; they value wealth less than liberty, and prefer death to slavery.

God hath given an erect countenance to man, bestowed on him many endowments of mind ; and granted him the earth for a habitation, which yields grass for cattle, affords flowers for bees, supplies food for man, and furnishes fuel for fire.

If this tyrant will not restore liberty to the citizens, return things to their owners, refund the money to the people, nor repay to every one his own, the people ought to seek

credo tu : Sum indignus fides. Nemo committo arcana fides is, qui promittit taciturnitas, et statim obliviscor promissum.

Præceptor remitto neglectus suus discipulus : Sed si semper ignosco is, tandem fit audax et incorrigibilis.

Avarus comparo magnus parvus, et postpono omnis nummus. Senex comparo fui senex, et antefero otium negotium : At puer fere posthabeo serius ludus.

Stultus confiro fui magnus et præpono voluptas virtus : Sed sapiens æquo sui inferior, et prefero amicitia pecunia ; postfero opes libertas, et antepono mors servitus.

Deus do sublimis os homo, tribuo is multus dos animus, et largioris terra in domicilium ; qui suggero gramen pecus, ministro flos apis, suppedito alimentum homo, et præbeo materia ignis.

Si hic tyrannus nobis reddo libertas civis, restituo res dominus suus, retribuio pecunia populus, nec non rependo quisque suus, populus debet quoque

70.

seek for themselves another governor, and procure an enemy to their foe.

This covetous fellow lays up riches for others, but he will not gain praise to himself: He hath lately betrothed his daughter to a gentleman, to whom he has promised a large portion; but he will not perform what he has promised him; for he designs to leave a very great estate to his son.

The gentleman, who used to send letters and presents to you, begins now to claim and assume high titles to himself: You owe him a great sum, and it is not your part to pay him bad money instead of good; you owe your life to him.

This man brings good news to us; he has told the whole affair to his master, and has assigned me the reason that he did so. I give credit to his words, for he does not use to tell a falsehood to any one; but speaks the truth to all; in this affair he has behaved well, I will return the favour.

It is the part of a fool to discover his sentiments to every one, to unfold his thoughts to mockers, to expose his mistakes to enemies, or to open his ears to flatterers: But we may discover any thing to a friend, or signify our mind to him by a letter.

It is the part of a good man to shew the way to him that wanders,

ro alius praefectus sui, atque acquirō hostis inimicus suus.

Hic avarus paro divitiā alius, sed non pario laus sui: Nuper spondeo filia vir, qui pollicor amplius dos; sed non praestō, qui promitto is; nam statuo relinquo permagnus haereditas filius.

Vir qui soleo mitto litera et munus tu, nunc incipio afferō et vindico magnus titulus sui: Debeo ille grandis pecunia, et non sum tuus solvo is adulterinus nuximus pro bonus; debeo vita ille.

Hic homo nuncio res laetus ego; narro omnis res dominus; et memoro ego causa quare ita facio. Tribuo fides verbum, non enim saleo dico falsus quivis; sed loquor verum omnis, hic in res ago bene, refero is gratia.

Sum stultus declaro sententia suus quivis, explico cogitatio suus irrifor, expono error suus inimicus, aut aperio auris assentator: At possum indico quivis res verus amicus, aut significo mens is per litera.

Sum bonus vir monstro, via errans, et ostendo is iter.

wanders, and point out to him his road. It is also the part of a good man to confess his sins to God, and own his mistakes to men. But he does wickedly, who denies aid to his country, or refuses a legacy to the man, to whom the testator hath left it.

Pain takes away the enjoyment of pleasure from men and often removes sleep from their eyes. Wine removes the load from the anxious spirit, and takes off the gloom from the brows; But it is the property of philosophy to remove error from the eyes.

A wise man suits himself to nature, and adds virtue to virtue: But a fool gives up his mind to intemperance, and brings misery on his country; sometimes he turns robber, and puts a sword to the throat of his countrymen; he joins to himself wicked fellows as companions, and adds strength to the mischief.

A brave man easily pardons others many things, himself nothing; he proclaims war against his lusts, but never desires to make war upon his country, nor engage himself in civil broils; he rather chooses to fasten his darts in the back of his enemies, to strike a terror into them, or to inflict punishment on criminals.

We ought to oppose a stout heart to hard fortune: But
we

iter. Sum etiam bonus vir, confiteor peccatum Deus, et fateor error homo. At improbe facio, qui nego opis patria, aut inficio legatum homo, qui legator relinquo.

Dolor aufero fructus voluptas homo, et saepe adimo somnus oculus. Vinum eximo onus sollicitus animus, et demo nubes supercilium: Sed sum proprius philosophia detraho error mens.

Sapiens accommodo sui natura, et addo virtus virtus: At stultus addico animus intemperantia, et adfero calamitas patria; interdum fio latro, et admoveo gladius jugulum civis; adjungo sui pravus homo socius, et adjicio vires malum.

Fortis vir facile ignosco alius multus, sui nihil; indico bellum cupiditas suus, sed nunquam cupio infero bellum patria, nec non infero sui civilis dissentio; malo infigo telum tergum hostis, incutio terror ille, aut irrigo pana peccans.

Debeo oppono fortis pectus adversus res: Sed non

we ought not to throw ourselves in among the darts of the enemy, and expose our life to danger without cause, especially now when night begins to spread darkness over the earth.

The bees prepare meat for winter; and a king ought to imitate them, and provide those things that are necessary for war, or a siege; he ought to set a general and lieutenants over his forces, and prescribe to every one his duty, that he may be able to prevent access to the enemy.

The king, being frightened, puts spurs to his horse, and withdraws himself from the battle; his army was routed and put to flight; the cities and towns, soon after began to submit themselves to the conqueror, and subject themselves to his government.

Gold and poverty have often persuaded men to bad things; but I give thanks to God, that my brother has done you no wrong: I give credit to the words of the messenger more than yours; I will not shut my ears to the truth.

God, who has threatened most dreadful punishment to the wicked, commands us to set bounds to our desires, and give a check to lust: Let us, therefore, lend a patient ear to his admonitions; let us not devote ourselves to pleasure

non debeo objicio ego telum hostis, et offero caput periculum sine causa, praesertim nunc cum nox incipit offundo caligo terra.

Apis preparo cibum hiem: et rex debeo imitor is, et paro is, qui sum necessarius bellum aut obsidio; debeo praeficio dux et legatus copia et praescribo unusquisque munia suus, ut possum praeccludo aditus hostis.

Rex territus, subdo calcar equus, et subtraho sui pugna; exercitus is fundo fugoque. Urbs et oppidum max cepi submitto sui victor, et subjicio sui imperium is.

Aurum et paupertas saepe suadeo malum homo; sed ego gratia Deus, quod frater meus facio tu nullus injuria: Habeo fides verbum nuncius magis quam tuus; nolo claudio auris veritas.

Deus, qui minor gravis supplicium impius, jubeo ego statuo modus cupidus noster, et injicio fraenum libido: Commodo, igitur, patiens auris monitum is, ne dedo ego voluptas; neque

pleasure nor give up ourselves to sloth nor idleness.

After this Alexander invites his friends to a feast; where, when mention was made of the things which Philip his father had done, he began to prefer himself before his father, and to extol the greatness of his own exploits to heaven, whilst the greater part of the guests said as he said.

When the ambassadors of the Athenians came to Alcibiades, he promised them the king's friendship, if the government should be transferred from the people to the Senate. The Athenians, because the danger of the war hung over them, had a greater care of their safety than honour; wherefore the government is transferred to the Senate.

The coming of the Carthaginians into Sicily recalled Dionysius, the tyrant, out of Italy. Hanno, the Carthaginian, was general of that war, whose enemy, Suniatus, the most powerful of the Carthaginians, endeavoured to give notice of his coming to Dionysius.

After Alexander, Arrybas's step son, and brother of Olympias, was come to the age of twenty years, Philip, king of Macedonia, took the kingdom of Epire from Arrybas, and gave it to the youth, being wicked towards both: For he

K

did

neque trado egomet secundaria nec vero ignavia.

Post hic Alexander voco amicus ad convivium: ubi cum mentio orior res qui Philippus pater is gero, capi praefero sui pater, et extollo magnitudo res. suus ceterum tenuis; dum magnus pars convivia assentor.

Cum legatus venio ad Alcibiades, polliceor is amicitia rex, si respublica translatus forem a populus ad Senatus. Atheniensis, quod periculum bellum is imminet, sum magnus cura salus quam dignitas; itaque imperium transfero ad Senatus.

Adventus Carthaginensis in Sicilia revoco tyrannus ex Italia. Hanno, Carthaginensis, sum dux is bellum, qui inimicus, Suniatus, potens Panis, conor praeuncio adventus is Dionysius.

Postquam Alexander, Arrybas privignus, et frater Olympias, pervenio ad aetas viginti annus, Philippus, rex Macedonia, eripio regnum Epirus Arrybas, et do puer, scelestus in uterque; Nam

non

did not observe the laws of affinity towards him, from whom he took the kingdom and made him, from whom he took it, a debauchee, before he made him a king.

Almost all the East appointed divine honours and temples for Jason, which, after many years, Parmenio a general of Alexander the great, ordered to be pulled down, lest the name of any one should be more venerable in the East, than the name of Alexander. After the death of Jason, Medius his son built the city of Media, in honour of his mother.

The Athenians, therefore, against so great a storm of war choose two generals, Pericles, a man of tried conduct, and Sophocles, the writer of tragedies; who both laid waste the land of the Spartans, and added many cities of Achaia to the empire of the Athenians. This affair procured to the generals the love of the citizens.

Wherefore, as all the pretenders were invited to the wedding, the Grecian strangers are desired likewise to the feast; then the young lady, being introduced, was ordered by her father to deliver water to him, whom she chose for her husband. She, turning to the Greeks, delivers the water to Protis, who afterwards

non servo jus cognatio in is qui adimo regnum, et facio is, qui do impudicus, antequam facio rex.

Totus fere Oriens constituo divinus honor et templum Jason, qui post multus annus, Parmenio, dux Alexander magnus, jubeo diruo, ne nomen quisquam sum venerabilis in Oriens, nomen Alexander. Post mors Jason, Medius is filius condo urbs Media in honor mater.

Atheniensis, igitur, adversus tantus tempestas bellum, deligo duo dux, Pericles, vir spectatus virtus, et Sophocles, scriptor tragædia, qui et vasto ager Spartani, et adjicio multus civitas Achaia imperium Atheniensis. Is res concilio dux amor civis.

Itaque cum omnis procus invito ad nuptiæ, Græcus hospes rogo etiam ad convivium; deinde virgo, introductus, jubeo a pater porrigo aqua is, qui eligo vir. Ille, conversus ad Græci, porrigo aqua Protis, qui postea condo

terwards built Massilia nigh the mouth of the river Rhone.

Claudius Cæsar made war upon Britain, with which none of the Romans after Julius Cæsar had meddled; he added likewise some islands lying on the ocean beyond Britain to the Roman empire, which are called the Orkneys, and gave the name of Britannicus to his son.

Vespasian was a prince of the most charming goodness, who did not easily punish those guilty of treason against himself beyond the pain of banishment; but he was too greedy of money, yet so that he took it from nobody unjustly, and bestowed it very liberally on people in want. He added two very potent nations, twenty towns and the isle of Wight near Britain, to the Roman empire. Under him too, Judea was added to the Roman empire, and Jerusalem, the most famous city of Palestine.

Cyrus takes Sybaris, and repairs to Persepolis; where he called the people together, and orders them all to be ready with axes, and cut down the wood, which hung over the highways; which when they had readily done, he invites them all to a feast the day after.

condo Massilia prope ostium amnis Rhodanus.

Claudius Cæsar infero bellum Britannia, qui nullus Romanus post Julius Cæsar attingo; addo etiam quidam insula positus in oceanus ultra Britannia Romanus imperium, qui appello Orcades, imponoque nomen Britannicus filius suus.

Vespasianus sum princeps placidus bonitas, qui non facile punio rursus majestas contra sui ultra pœna exilium, sed sum avidus pecunia, tamen ita ut aufero is nullus injuste, et largior is studiose indigens. Adjiciã duo validus gens, viginti oppidum, et insula Vectæ proximus Britannia Romanus imperium. Sub hic quoque Judæa accedo Romanus imperium; et Hierosolyma, clarus urbs Palestina.

Cyrus assumo Sabaris, et regredior ad Persepolis; ubi convoco populus, et jubeo omnis præsto sum cum securis, et excido silva, qui imminet via; quo cum strenue facio invito omnis ad epulum postridie.

CHAP.

C H A P. XXVII.

After Verbs of *Local Motion*, as *eo, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio*; and Verbs, that signify tendency to *Motion*, as *tendo, vergo, specto, pertineo*, the *Accusative* with *ad*, is to be used, rather than the *Dative*: For, the Preposition, *to*, after these Verbs is not the sign of the *Dative*.

GOD frequently inviteth sinners to eternal happiness; he daily calleth them to repentance; he speaketh most graciously unto them; he hath prepared all things for penitent sinners, that belong to happiness.

A faithful master exhorteth his pupils to diligence and industry in their studies, which will be very beneficial to them.

The scholar that playeth when he goeth to school, shall suffer severe punishment; and besides that, when he cometh to his study again, his business is more wearisome because of his past idleness.

Man hasteth to his end, whilst he seemeth strong of body, and sprightly in mind; and is every now and then near his death; many dangers surround him, one of which may bring him to his grave.

The

DEUS sepe invito peccator ad felicitas eternus; quotidie voco ille ad penitentia; loquor ad ille benigne; paro peccator penitens omnis, qui pertineo ad beatitudo.

Magister fidus hortor discipulus is ad diligentia et industria in studium; qui sum utibus ille.

Discipulus, qui vado, cum eo ad schola, do peccata feceras; et praeterea cum redeo ad studium furus, pensum is sum molestus ob ignavia praeteritus.

Homo propero ad finis suus, dum videor robustus corpus, et alacer mens, et sum subinde prope mors suus; periculum multus cingo is, qui unus possum duco ille ad sepulchrum.

Dux

The general conformed himself to the inclination of the prince, and called the villains before him: They had provoked us to anger, had challenged us to a combat, had spirited up others to the same crime, and spurred them on to arms. The next day, however, the general invited them all to a feast, and exhorted them to peace.

The love of praise rouses men to their duty, disposes their minds to industry, and incites them to glorious actions: But the love of money prompts men to villainous practices, allures them to wickedness, and entices maids to dishonesty.

Whilst all were amazed at the cruel tyranny of Aristotimus, Helenicus, an old man, who had no children, gathers together his friends, and exhorts them to the delivery of their country. They conspire together against the tyrant's life, and Aristotimus is suppressed.

It is a commendable thing for a boy to apply his mind to the study of good letters; they will be always useful to him, they will procure him the favour and love of good men, which those, that are wise, value more than riches and pleasure.

All the rivers run into the sea, and we all hasten to one habitation. My brother entered the army, went to a

Dux conformo sui ad voluntas rex, et scelestus ad sui voco: Lacesso ego ad ira, provoco ego ad certamen, animo alius ad idem crimen, et stimulo is ad arma. Postridie, tamen, dux invito omnis ad epulæ, et hortor is ad pax.

Amor laus fuscito homo ad officium suus, inclino animus ad diligentia, et incito is ad præclarus facinus: Sed amor nummus instigo vir ad malus ars, allicio is ad nequitia, et pelticio virgo ad stuprum.

Cum omnis stupeo ad sævus dominatio Aristotimus, Hellenicus, senex, qui nullus liberi sum, contraho amicus suus, et hortor is ad vindicta patria. Conjuro in caput tyrannus, et Aristotimus opprimo.

Laudabilis sum puer adjungo animus ad studium bonus litera; sum semper utilis ille, concilio ille favor et amor bonus, qui sapiens æstimo plus quam divitiæ et voluptas.

Omnis fluvius curro in mare, et ego omnis sedes propero ad unus. Meus frater eo in militia, vado

battle; but being conquered, he hastened to the shore, fled into Africa, and went to the city of Carthage. His friends, to whom the business chiefly belonged, afterwards brought him back: His years are now on the decline towards old age. Virtue aims at high things.

It belongs to parents and masters to exhort children to virtue. It conduces much to the good of the commonwealth to favour learned men. It is a wicked thing to encourage others to wickedness. It is the part of a prudent boy to apply his mind to the study of learning and virtue.

Cæsar provoked the enemy to battle. Ill language stirs men up to anger. It tends to the good of the publick, that rogues be punished. Temperance avails much to the health of the body.

The Apolloniates send ambassadors to Cæsar, and receive him into their town. The Bullidenses, Amantiani, and other neighbouring cities follow them, send ambassadors to Cæsar, and promise him, that they would do whatsoever he should command; which when Pompey heard, he was wonderfully surprised.

Darius also, king of the Persians, mindful of his father's and grandfather's hatred against the city of Athens, made a league with the Lacedæmonians.

in prælium, sed victus, festino ad littus, fugio in Africa, et pergo ad urbs Carthago. Amicus, ad qui res maxime pertineo, postea reduco: Annus jam vergo in senium. Virtus ad arduus tendo.

Attineo. ad parens et præceptor exhortor puer ad virtus. Conduco multum ad bonum respublica faveo vir doctus. Sum nefarius hortor alius ad scelus. Sum prudens puer adjungo animus ad studium literæ et virtus.

Cæsar provoco hostis ad pugna. Convitium instigo homo ad ira. Specto ad utilitas respublica, ut improbus punio. Temperantia valeo multum ad salus corpus.

Apolloniates mitto legatus ad Cæsar, et recipio is in oppidum. Bullidenses, Amantiani, et alius finitimus civitas sequor is, mitto legatus ad Cæsar, et polliceor is fuisse facio qui impero; qui cum Pompeius audio, magnopere perturbo.

Darius etiam, rex Persa, memor paternus et avitus odium in urbs Athenæ, facio societas cum Lacedæmonius per Tiffarnes,

dæmonians by Tissafernes, the governor of Lydia, promising them all the charge of the war; for he was afraid, lest, after the Lacedæmonians had conquered the Athenians, they would transfer their arms to him.

The critic art comprises three things; first, rules and precepts belonging to the order, according to which we ought to read the ancients; secondly, canons concerning the interpretation of words and expressions; thirdly, precepts concerning the judgment, that ought to be made of old authors.

When Gallimander was brought to the king, not only pardon, but a reward of his fidelity was given him; but he strikes Demetrius heavily, and sends him back to his wife into Hyrcania, and orders him to be kept more strictly. A little after he attempted to make his escape again; but was brought back and conducted to the king, who was very angry with him, and ordered him to be removed out of his sight.

Darius, ready to die, said, that he thanked Alexander for his kindness and generosity to his relations; that he prayed the gods that they would give him the empire of the whole world; and as to what belonged to the revenge of his death, that it was not his only, but the common cause

fernes, præfectus Lydiæ, pollicitus is omnis sumptus bellum; nam timeo, ne, postquam Lacedæmonius vincit Atheniensis, transfero arma ad sui.

Criticus ars complector tres: primò, monitum et præceptum pertinens ad ordo, secundum qui de libro lego vetus; secundo, canon de interpretatio verbum et locutio; tertio, præceptum de iudicium qui de libro fero de liber vetus auctor.

Cum Gallimander perduco ad rex, non tantum veniã, sed etiam præmium fides do is, sed castigo Demetrius graviter, et remitto conjux in Hyrcaniã, et jubeo is observo arctius. Paulo post tento denuo fuga; sed retraho et perduco ad rex, qui transcor is, et jubeo is summo deo e. conspectus.

Darius moribundus dico, sui ago gratia Alexander pro humanitas et liberalitas is in suis; sui precor Deus uti do is imperium totus terrarum orbis; et quod pertinet ad ultio mors suis, non sum suis tantum, sed communis causa omnis rex, qui sum indecorus

cause of all kings, which it was very dishonourable and dangerous for Alexander to neglect.

The captain general of the Gauls congratulated them, because he perceived they belonged to the care of the immortal gods; he presented a golden calf to the goddess, and made an alliance with them forever.

indecorus et periculofus Alexander negligo.

Dux Gallus gratulor is, quod animadverto is pertineo ad cura deus immortalis; dono torquis a reus dea, et jungo amicitia cum is in perpetuum.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Verbs of *Accusing, Condemning, Warning and Acquitting*, govern an Accusative of the *Person*, and the Genitive of the *Crime or Thing*.

ONE scholar accuseth another of idleness, and though the master heareth their accusations, yet he punisheth those only, whom he thinks guilty.

When a murderer obtaineth pardon, though he escapeth the gallows, yet he is not cleared from guilt.

Adversity puts men in mind of religion. Thy sickness ought to put thee in mind of death.

He was cleared of the crime of which he was accused. He was accused of the most heinous crimes, but cleared of all.

DISCIPULUS *alius accuso alius ignavia, et quamvis præceptor audio delatio is, tamen punio ille solus, qui peccato reus.*

Cum homicida obtineo venia, quanquam evito patibulum, tamen non purgo reatus.

Res adversus admonéo homo religio. Morbus debeo moneo tu mors.

Abfolvo crimen qui accuso. Accuso gravis scelus, sed abfolvo omnis.

This

Hic

This man was condemned for murder, and the other was condemned for bribery.

He that accuses another of a crime ought to look well to himself: For it is the property of a fool to accuse another of a fault, of which his self is guilty.

The soldiers were in a rage, and began to charge the tribunes with treason and treachery, and to accuse the centurions of avarice.

The deputies have accused this man of extortion; he cannot govern his tongue, he will make himself guilty of theft, or bribery.

Forbear to charge your friend with villany, or reproach him with arrogance; he condemns himself of rashness, he condemns himself of foolishness.

The Senate neither freed the man of the fault, nor accused him; but after he had cleared himself of all the things, that were alleged, the judges acquitted him of the trespass.

Our infirmity often reminds us of mortality, sickness warns us of death, adversity ought to admonish us of our duty, and put us in mind of religion.

Hippias ordered the murderer of his brother to be seized; who, being forced by torments to name those, that were guilty of the murder; named

Hic homo damno cædes, et alius damno repetundæ.

Qui accuso alter probrum, debeo intueor sui ipse: Nam sum stultus, incuso alter peccatum, qui ipse sum conscius.

Miles fremo, et cepti arguo tribunos majestatis et proditio, et injuncta centurio avaritia.

Legatus postulo hic homo repetundæ; ipse non possum moderor lingua, alligo sui furtum, aut ambitus.

Parco damno amicus tuus scelus, aut infamo is arrogantia; condemno fiti temeritas, condemno sui amentia.

Senatus nec libero homo culpa, nec arguo; seti postquam purgo sui omnis, qui afferro, judex absolvo is injuria.

Imbecillitas noster saepe admoneo ego mortalitas, morbus moneo ego mors, res adversus debeo commonefacio ego officium noster, et commoneo ego religio.

Hippias jubeo interfecto frater suus comprehendo; qui, coactus per tormentum nomino is, qui sum conscius cædes, nomino

named all the tyrant's friends, that were slain. His courage put the city in mind of their liberty, and Hippias was at length banished.

When the army of the thirty tyrants, of which the greatest part were Athenians, fled, Thraſybulus called out, and put them in mind of their relations, the laws, and their old friendship in ſo many wars, and begged, that they would pity their baniſhed countrymen.

He that is accused of a wicked action, or he that is called in question about any thing, is called in Latin *reus*; but he that is accused of a fault, is not immediately in fault, nor ought to be accounted guilty of the crime, till it be proved: For, if to accuse any one of a crime, were sufficient for condemnation, who could be safe?

Alexander, in his passage, put the Theſſalians in mind of the kindness of his father Philip, and his mother's alliance with them, by the family of the *Æacidæ*. The Theſſalians heard these things gladly, and made him captain general of the whole nation.

Julius Cæſar was a very spare drinker of wine, and ſo indifferent about his diet, that he is ſaid to have once uſed old oil ſerved up inſtead of freſh, that he might not
ſeem

ino omnis tyrannus amicus, qui interficio. Hic virtus admoneo civitas libertas, et Hippias tandem ago in exilium.

Cum exercitus triginta tyrannus, qui pars maximus sum Atheniensis, fugio, Thraſybulus exclamo, et admoneo is cognatio, lex, et vetustas commilitium per tot bellum, et oro ut misereo is exul civis.

Qui accuso facinus, aut qui postulo de res aliquis, voco Latine, reus; sed qui accuso culpa, non sum continuo in culpa, nec debeo existimo conscius crimen donec proba: Nam, si accuso aliquis crimen sum satis ad condemnatio, quis possum sum tutus?

Alexander, in transitus, admoneo Theſſalus beneficium pater Philippus, et maternus necessitudo cum hic gens Æacidæ. Theſſalus audio hic cupidè, et creo ille dux universus gens.

Julius Cæſar sum parvus vinum, et adeo indifferens circa victus, ut dico quondam appeto conditus olum, appositus pro viridis, ne videor arguo hospes

them to accuse his entertainer of negligence nor rusticity.

Not long after Cæpio and Hispo accused Marcellus, prætor of Bithynia, of high treason. The calamities of the times, and the insolence of men rendered Hispo and his way of life afterwards famous: At first he was needy and obscure, but turbulent, he made his court to the cruelty of the princes.

Capito objected, that Thrasca, though invested with the priesthood, had never made oblations for the safety of the prince, and that he had not attended the funeral of Popea. Capito was an enemy to Thrasca, because he had supported the deputies of the Cilicians when they accused him of extortion.

A certain informer long ago accused this honest man of a wicked action; the judges however, did not find him guilty of the villany, but absolved him from the charge. The cursed rogue was cast into prison, where he leads a life worse than death. He often blames the times for the mischief of which he is the cause.

On the other side, the consul bid the Romans remember their former bravery; he put them in mind of the Aventine and Sacred Mount, that they should fight for their liberty, which

pes negligentia neque rusticitas.

Nec multo post Cæpio et Hispo postulo Marcellus, prætor Bithynia, majestas. Misera tempus et audacia homo facio Hispo et forma vita postea celebris: Primo sum egens, et ignotus, at inquires, ad-repo sævitia princeps.

Capito objecto, Thrasca, quamvis præditus sacerdotium, nunquam immolo pro salus princeps, et non intersum funus Popea. Capito sum inimicus Thrasca, quod juvo legatus Cilices, dum interrogo is repetundæ.

Delator quidam olim accuso hic probus vir facinus, judex tamen non condemno is scelus, sed absolvo is crimen. Sceleratus homo conjicio in carcer, ubi vita gravis mors exigo. Sæpe damno tempus infelicitas, qui ipse sum causa.

Ex alter pars consul jubeo Romanus memini pristinus virtus; admoneo is Aventinus et Sacermons,

which they had lately recovered.

Who doubts but many innocent persons have been brought to trial for life and condemned to death? And that a great many wicked villains have been tried for life, and absolved from the crimes of which they are guilty? But they shall not escape in the world to come. God will not absolve them from the wickedness which they have committed.

Whilst these things were done in the East, the Athenians and Ætolians raised a war in Greece, the cause of which was, that Alexander being returned from India, had written letters into Greece, in which the exiles of all the cities were restored, besides those that had been condemned for murder.

mons, ut pugno pro libertas, qui nuper recupero.

Quis dubito, quin multus homo innocens accuso caput, et damna caput? Et multus homo facinorosus accusa caput, et absolvo crimen qui sum conscius. Sed non effugio in seculum futurus. Deus non absolvo is scelus qui perpetro.

Dum hic ago in Oriens, Atheniensis et Ætoli meo bellum in Græcia: causa qui sum quod Alexander reversus ab India, scribo epistola in Græcia, in qui exul omnis civitas restitua, præter is qui damna cædes.

C H A P. XXIX.

Active Verbs of *Clothing, Intreating, Asking, Teaching, Warning, Undressing* and *celo*, govern two Accusatives, one of *the Person*, and the other of *the Thing*.

ASK pardon of God for your sins, who only can forgive sinners.

ROGO Deus venia ob peccatum tuus, qui solus possum ignosco peccator.

Besides

Præter

Besides obedience Christ teaches us christians faith.

They that conceal their faults from men, and put over their crimes a covering of lies, displease God, and add a greater fault to their own impieties.

Do thou only ask favour of the gods.

He ordered, that they should go to Verres, and demand of him the statue of Ceres and victory.

We all beg peace of you ; the soldiers beseech this of you ; the general himself entertains this of you.

This one thing I beg of you, that you would cease to lie ; grant, that I may obtain this favour of you.

When I ask money of you without a pawn ; you say, I have none.

I have a bounteous stock of natural sense, and the rich court me, though poor ; I importune the gods for nothing more, nor do I dun my potent friend for greater things.

Poverty teaches some men temperance, and makes them relinquish their former fashions ; but those men act wisely, who ask life, health and subsistence of God.

Minerva taught Telemachus, all her arts ; she taught him the laws and precepts of war.

Præter obedientiam, Christus doceo ego christianus fides.

Qui celo culpa suus homo, et induo crimen suus tegumentum mendacium, displiceo Deus, et addo culpa magnus impietas suus.

Tu modo posco deus venia.

Jubeo, ut adeo ad Verres, et reposito is simulachrum Ceres et victoria.

Pax tu posco omnis ; miles tu hic obsecro ; dux ipse hic tu precor.

Hic unus tu oro, ut desino mentior ; sino ut exoro tu hic venia.

Cum rogo tu nummus sine pignus ; non habeo, inquam.

Sum ego benignus vena ingenium, divesque ego peto pauper ; lacesso deus nihil supra, nec flagito potens amicus largus.

Egestas doceo aliquis temperantia, et dedoceo is prior mos ; sed hic homo ago prudenter, qui rogo Deus vita, salus, et victus.

Minerva edoceo Telemachus omnis ars suus ; erudio is lex præceptumque bellum.

L

He

Ille

He taught this boy the Greek and Latin languages, he taught him all the arts; and I besought him chiefly, that he would season his mind with piety.

The people conferred on him the sovereignty; they did not take the advice of the more elderly, nor asked them their opinion. Thus whilst they are angry at the Senate's power, they deliver themselves, with their wives and children, into slavery; wherefore the tyrant seizes sixty senators, lays them in chains, and threatens them with death.

After they all with tears had begged peace of the king, he replied, if they would give him pledges, that they might know they would do the things which they had promised, and if they would satisfy his allies and neighbours for the injuries they had done them, that he would make peace with them.

Vitellus, bent on the death and punishment of almost every one, cut off a great many noblemen; he scarcely spared any of the usurers and publicans, who had ever demanded of him a debt or duty; he put to death also some of the commons, because they had cursed the blue faction.

After him Marcus Antonius held the government alone, a man of the most frank generosity, whom all men admired; he was trained up to philosophy

Ille doceo hic puer Græcus et Latinus litera, doceo is omnis ars, et hic presertim oro ut animus is pietas imbuo.

Plebs defero is summus imperium; non consulo senior, neque rogo is sententia suus. Ita dum irascor Senatus potentia, trado sui cum conjux et liberi, in servitus; itaque tyrannus comprehendendo sexaginta senator, compingo in vinculum, et minor ille mors.

Postquam omnis cum lachryma posco rex pax, respondeo, si do sui obsec, ut intelligo is facio is qui polliceor, et ꝑ satisfacio socius et finitimus suus de injuria qui infero ipse, sui facio pax cum is.

Vitellus, pronus ad nex atque supplicium fere quisque, occido multus nobilis vir; vix parco ullus fenerator publicanusque, qui unquam flagito sui debitum aut portorium; interimo quidam de plebs, quod maledico venetus factio.

Post is Marcus Antonius teneo respublica solus, vir promptus liberalitas, qui omnis miror; instituo ad philosophia per Apollonius

lofophy by Apollonius, to the knowledge of the Greek tongue, by Sextus, the grandson of Plutarch; Fronto, the orator, taught him the Latin tongue.

Pythagoras taught the matrons chastity and complaisance towards their husbands; he taught the boys modesty and the study of letters; amidst these things he inculcated upon all frugality, as the mother of virtues; he recommended temperance, and enumerated, every day the mischiefs of luxury. So great was the admiration of this man, that, after his death, they made a temple of his house, and worshipped him for a god.

Catiline taught the youth whom he had seduced many wicked practices: For as every one's fancy, according to his age was fired, he furnished whores to some, bought dogs and horses for others; in short he spared neither expense, nor his own modesty, provided he could make them subject and trusty to him.

lonius, ad scientia Græcus litera per Sextus, nepos Plutarchus; Fronto, orator, doceo is Latinus litera.

Pythagoras doceo matrona pudicitia, et obsequium in vir; doceo puer modestia, et studium litera, inter hic ingero omnis frugalitas, velut genitrix virtus; laudo temperantia, et enumero, quotidie, vitium luxuria. Tantus sum admiratio hic vir, ut post mors is, facio templum ex domus is, coloque is pro deus.

Catilina edoceo juventus qui illicio multus malus facinus: Nam, uti quisque studium, ex ætas, flagro, præbeo scortum alius, mercor canis et equus alius; postremo, parco neque sumptus, neque modestia suus, dum factio ille obnoxius fidusque sui.

C H A P. XXX.

Verbs that signify to *Fill, Empty, Load, Unload, Deprive, Rob, Spoil, Free, Bind, Loose* and *Clothe*, govern an Ablative of the Thing with which any Vessel is *Filled, Emptied, &c.* and an Accusative of the *Person, or Thing*, that is the *Subject*.

A THIEF robbeth a traveller of his money; but at length depriveth himself of life: For his villany bringeth himself to shame and death.

All the upper places were seen filled with a great number of armed men.

The Romans deprived the Carthaginians of all the isles, which they held in the Mediterranean.

We see some men abounding with money and wealth, yet do desire those things mostly with which they abound.

After they had loaded the altar with presents, they disburdened themselves of cares, and loaded the ship with arms and provisions, and sailing out of the harbour they covered the whole sea with their fleet.

The tyrant filled his country with blood and slaughter, he filled

*L*ATRO spolia viator pecunia; at tandem privo sui vita: Nequitia enim is adduco is ad decus et ven.

Omnis superior locus conspicio completus multitudo armatus.

Romanus spolio Poeni omnis insula, qui teneo in mare Mediterraneus.

Video quidam homo circumstans pecunia et opes, tamen desidero is maxime qui abundo.

Postquam cumulo altarum donum, onero sui cura, et onero navis arma et comestus, et egressus e portus operio totus pelagus classis.

Tyrannus impleo patria sanguis et caedes, repleo

filled the city with havock and carnage, he filled every house with mourning, which filled men's ears with direful rumors.

After he had satiated himself with revenge, after he had glutted himself with slaughter, after he had satiated himself with the blood of citizens, he sat down to a feast and glutted himself with meat and drink.

But Æolus, who controuls the winds with imperial sway, had resolved when night should cover the earth with darkness, to bury them under the waves, whilst there should be none at hand, that could relieve their minds from the distress.

You will easily gain over good men by acts of kindness; but it is necessary to tie up some men by laws, to bind others with chains, that they may not obstruct the publick good by their private quarrels.

The wicked endeavour to ensnare others with the allurements of vice; but they cannot disengage themselves from troubles nor extricate themselves from sorrows; for though fortune sometimes delivers them from punishment, she never frees them from fear.

This new philosophy deprives us of our rest, despoils us of our judgment, bereaves

pleo civitas strages et internecio, compleo omnis domus luctus, qui refertio homo auris dirus rumor.

Postquam expleo sui ultio, postquam satio sui cædes, postquam saturo sui sanguis civis, accumbo epulum, et ingurgito sui cibis potusque.

At Æolus, qui ventus imperium premo, statuo cum nox obruo terra tenebræ, opprimo is fluctus, dum nullus adsum, quaervo animus ægritudo.

Facile divinco bonus beneficium; at necessum sumoligo quidam lex, astringo alius vinculum, ne impeditio bonum publicus privatus simultas.

Malus conor irrito alius illecebræ vitium; at non possum laxo sui molestia, nec expedio sui ærumna; licet enim fortuna interdum libero is supplicium, nunquam solvo is metus.

Hic novus philosophia privo ego quies, spolio ego iudicium, erbo ego sensus, fraudo

us of our senses, it cheats the young men out of their diversions, cozens the old men out of their money, nay it robs the temples of presents.

The ancients used to clothe their bodies with the skins of wild beasts, and to cover the temples of the gods with boughs; but men now clothe themselves with garments of silk; even when winter has covered the earth with snow.

The Athenians used to crown their conquerors with olive, or bedeck the temples of their heads with laurel, when they had forced an enemy from his camp, or saved a citizen by their arms; they used also to crown their poets with ivy or laurel; they shod their comedians with sandals, and their tragedians with buskins.

After he had taken the enemy's camp, filled with plenty of all things, he gave all the plunder to his own soldiers; and chiding the consular army, and the consul himself, he says, you shall go without your part of the spoil of that enemy to which you yourself were nearly a prey.

The ambassadors of the Gauls returning, shewed the king's wealth and negligence. They tell him, that the camp was filled with gold and silver, that it was not secured either with a rampart or ditch; and that they neglected all military offices; as if they did

fraudo adolescens oblectamentum, emingo senex argentum, imo nudo fanum donum.

Vetustus soleo vestio corpus spectum fera, et velo delubrum deus frons; at nunc homo in auro ferifericus vestimentum, etiam cum bruma amicio terræ nix.

Atheniensis soleo coronæ victor olea, aut cingo templus laurus, cum ex quo hostis castra, aut tego civis arma; soleo etiam coronæ poeta hedera aut laurus, comædus calceo fuccus, et tragædus cothurnus.

Postquam capio hostis castra refertus copia omnis res, do præda omnis miles suus, et increpans consularis exercitus, et ipse Consul, inquam, careo pars præda ex is hostis, qui tu ipse sum prope præda.

Legatus Gallus reverfus, ostendo rex opes et negligentia. Dico castra sum repletus aurum et argentum, non sum munitus vel vallum vel fossa; et is intermitto omnis militaris officium; quasi non indigeo

did not want the help of the sword, because they abounded in gold.

The Gauls did so abound with numbers of people that they filled all Asia as it were with a swarm. Finally neither the kings of the East carried on any war without a mercenary army of Gauls; nor, being driven out of their kingdoms, did they fly to any other than the Gauls.

Although he was but a boy, whilst his father was absent, he recruited the army, and not only recovered Macedonia, which had been lost, but also deprived Alexander of the kingdom of Epire.

When Alcibiades returned, the Athenians loaded him not only with all human honour, but divine; they compensated his losses with presents.

After he had obliged the neighbouring princes with presents and complaisance, he lays a plot for his sister's son, whom he resolves to deprive of life, and his possessions, and he would have robbed him of his kingdom, had not a mutiny of the soldiers ensued, whom he had cheated of their pay.

At Alesia, Cæsar drew two ditches fifteen feet broad, the innermost of which he filled with water conveyed from the river. This the enemy afterwards endeavoured to cover

*indigeo auxilium ferrum,
quia abundo aurum.*

*Gallus adeo abunda
multitudo, ut impleo om-
nis Asia velut examen.
Denique neque rex Oriens
gero ullus bellum sine merce-
cenarius exercitus Gallus;
nec pulsus e regnum con-
fugio alius quam Gal-
lus.*

*Tametsi admodum puer
sum, dum pater absum,
reparo exercitus, et non
solum recipio Macedonia
qui amitto, sed etiam spo-
lio Alexander regnum E-
pirus.*

*Cum Alcibiades redeo,
Atheniensis onero is non
tantum omnis humanus
honor, sed divinus; expleo
detrimentum munus.*

*Postquam divinco finit-
imus rex munus et obse-
quium, soror filius infidiae
instruo, qui statuo privo
vita et possessio; et spolia
is regnum ni seditio miles
insequor, qui stipendium
fraudo.*

*Apud Alesia, Cæsar
perduco duo fossa quindec-
cim pes latus, qui interior
compleo aqua ex flumen
derivatus. Hic hostis
postea*

cover over with hurdles, and fill up with the rampart.

Whilst he thinks himself despised, he fills the city with slaughter, for which he was odious to all.

They filled all the coast of Italy, Sicily and Sardinia, with two hundred ships.

postea conor intego crates atque expleo agger.

Dum puto sui contemno, repleo civitas caedes, ob qui sum invisus omnis.

Impleo omnis ora Italia, Sicilia, et Sardinia, ducenti navis.

C H A P. XXXI.

*Abutor, communico, consto, creor, cresco, defungor, dignor, edo, epulor, fruor, fungor, gaudio, generor, gignor, gestio, glorior, impertio, impertior, indignor, laetor, nascor, nitor, orior, pascor, propugno, prosequor, sero, sto, superse-
deo, utor, vescor, victito, and tristior, govern
the Ablative.*

Verbs of *Abounding*, and *Wanting* govern either the Ablative or Genitive.

HE that wants money is accounted a fool.

He that wants virtue, wants all things.

Nature wants few and small things.

We ought to help those chiefly, who want most relief.

This place is encompassed on all sides with craggy rocks, that it needs no defenders, and such is the fruitfulness of the adjacent soil, that it is filled with its own riches; and such is the plenty of fountains

QUI indigeo pecunia, habeo stultus.

Qui careo virtus, careo omnis.

Natura egeo paucus et parvus.

Debeo opitulor is potissimum, qui maxime indigeo opis.

Hic locus cingo undique præruptus rupes, ut egeo nullus defensor, et tantus sum fertilitas circumjacens solum, ut expleo suus opes; et is sum copia fons.

tains and woods, that it is watered with abundance of water, and wants not the diversion of hunting.

Many men abound in gold and silver, whose houses are full of wickedness.

Some men overflow in wealth, nay overflow in money, and yet desire those things most with which they abound.

This man pleads the cause strenuously; he is bedewed with sweat; he is over copious in his language; his discourse, however, abounds with every ornament.

Nature needs few things; he, however, that wants friends, and he, that is weak in judgment, or is disappointed of his expectations, stands in need of advice; but to be free from a fault is a great comfort.

We ought to use diligence and not to abuse time: The life which we enjoy is short; let us therefore do our duty carefully; thus at length we shall obtain the golden fleece, we shall feed on milk and honey.

Men ought to depend on virtue rather than blood: for if any one persist in this practice, and take pleasure in equity, he deserves praise. But fools often labour under this distemper, that they glory in their faults, rejoice at other men's misfortunes, are delighted

fons et sylva, ut irrigo, abundantia aqua, nec careo voluptas venatio.

Multus homo abundo aurum et argentum, qui domus scelus affluo.

Quidam homo circumfluo opes, imo superfluo pecunia, et tamen desidero is maxime qui abundo.

Hic vir ago causa strenue; diffluo sudor; redundo eloquentia; oratio tamen abundo omnis ornamentum.

Natura egeo pauci; qui autem careo amicus, et qui deficior ratio, aut destitutor spes, indigeo consilium; sed vaco culpa magnus sum solatium.

Debeo utor diligentia, et non abutor tempus; vita qui fruor sum brevis, fungor igitur officium sedulo; sic tandem potior aureus vellus, vescor lac et mel.

Homo debeo nitor virtus potius quam sanguis; nam si quis innitor hic ars et gaudeo equitas, mereor laus. Sed stultus, saepe is morbus laboro, ut glorior vitium suus, lator alienus malum, delektor

vanus

lighted with vain hope, and exult on success.

The rich feed on dainty dishes, but the poor live on barley bread, nay some live on husks. Let us lay aside the prolixity of words; for many poor people descended of honourable parents, have retired from the city, on account of the dearth of corn.

This field consists of vineyards and woods; I might retain it, but I will stand by my bargain and my promise: Thus good men will praise me, the poor will bless me.

Who shall see swoln Tyber to abound in Trojan blood, the whole house of Evander to be extinguished with its race, and the Arcadians spoiled of arms.

But I, O Pallas, will not honour you with any other funeral pomp.

We invite the gods and Jove himself to the prey and part; we then spread our couches on the winding shore, and feast on the rich dainties.

Banished from his country, torn from the embrace of Iulus, let him implore aid, and see the dishonourable deaths of his friends; nor, when he shall have yielded himself to the conditions of unequal peace, may he enjoy his kingdom, or the wished for life.

Give lilies in handfuls, that I may scatter purple flowers, and honour the ghost of the grandchild

vanus spes, et exultio successus.

Dives epulor opimus dapes, sed pauper victitio hordeaceus panis, imo quidam vivo siliqua. Superfedeo multitudo verbum, nam multus pauper, prognatus honestus parens, cedo urbs, propter caritas annona.

Hic ager consto vinea et sylva; possum retineo, sed sto pactum et promissum: Sic bonus ego laudo, pauper ego benedico.

Qui video tumidus Tyber cresco Iliacus sanguis, totus domus Evander procumbo cum stirps, atque Arcadæ exutus arma.

Quin ego, Palla, non dignor tu alius funus.

Voco divus ipseque Jupiter in præda parsque; tunc extruo torus littus curvus, que opulor daps opimus.

Finis extorris, complexus avulfus Iulus, imploro auxilium, videoque indignus funus suus; nec, cum trado sui sub lex pax iniquus, regnum aut optatus lux fruor.

Do liliam manus plenus, spargo purpureus flos, que accumulato anima nepos

grandchild with these presents, and discharge the unavailing office.

Whom Telon is said to have begotten from the nymph Sebethis, when he possessed Caprea, the kingdom of the Teleboi.

He designed to have used the same kindness towards the Thebans, if he had found the same repentance, but the Thebans made use of arms, not prayers and entreaties. Wherefore, being conquered, they underwent the most intolerable hardships of a most miserable slavery.

He then desires aid of Leonatus, by his ambassadors, whom the Athenians met with an army, and slew him. Antipater, though he saw his auxiliaries defeated, yet rejoiced at the death of Leonatus. He was glad that his rival was taken off, and that himself was strengthened by the accession of his forces.

In Thessaly Cæsar's army enjoyed very good health, and very great plenty of water, and abounded in every kind of provision, except corn.

Great armies need great generals. Though Cæsar's soldiers had long wanted corn, and endured the most pinching famine, yet no word was heard from them unworthy of the majesty of the Roman people,

nepos hic donum, et fungor inanis munus.

Qui Telon feror genero nymphæ Sebethis, cum teneo Caprea, regnum Teleboi.

Constituo utor idem clementia in Thebanis, si experior idem penitentia; sed Thebanus utor arma, non preces et deprecatio. Itaque, victus, experior gravis supplicium miser servitus.

Deinde peto auxilium a Leonatus, per legatus, qui Atheniensis occurro exercitus et occido is. Antipater etsi video auxilium suus supero, tamen lætor mors Leonatus. Gaudeo æmulus sublatus sum, et sui auctus accessio is vires.

In Thessalia Cæsar exercitus utor bonus valetudo summusque copia aqua, abundoque omnis genus commeatus, præter frumentum.

Magnus exercitus ego magnus dux. Quamvis Cæsar miles diu careo frumentum, et sustento extremus fames, tamen nullus vox audio ab is indignus majestas populus

people, or of their former victories.

The Sythians have not any house, or dwelling, or habitation; they carry their wives and children along with them in waggons which they use instead of houses; they live on milk and venison, the use of wool is quite unknown to them.

lus Romanus, aut superior victoria.

Scythæ non sum ullus domus, aut tectum, aut sedes; veho uxor liberique sui cum in plaustrum, qui utor pro domus; vescor lac et ferina; usus lana sum profus ignotus is.

C H A P. XXXII.

The part of the *Body*, or *Mind* affected, is in the Ablative, and governed by the Verb, that denotes the *Affection*.

Verbs of *Buying* and *Selling* govern an Ablative of the Noun, that is the *Price* for which any thing is *Bought*, or *Sold*.

Muto and *commuto* govern an Accusative of the thing *Changed*, or *Given*; and the Ablative of the thing for which it is *Changed*, or *Given*.

Mereor, when qualified with *bene*, *male*, *melius*, *pejus*, *optime*, *peissime*, govern the Ablative with the Preposition *de*.

Verbs importing *Distance* and *Excelling*, govern the Nouns following them, in the Ablative.

LET us seek the Gnosian realms; they are not distant in a long course.

But the ram himself shall now, in the meadows, change his

GNOSSIUS regnum peto; nec disto longus carsus.

Sed aris ipse muto velus, in pratium, jam rubens

his fleece for a purple red, and now for a saffron pale.

Others rejoice sprinkled with the blood of their brethren, and change their habitations and pleasing thresholds for exile, and seek a country lying in another clime.

And which would believe, that the glory, to which thou aspirest, might be well bought for life.

A merchant will never be rich, that buyeth wares for a hundred pounds, and selleth them again for a hundred pence.

This book is worth seven groats, but the bookseller sold it me for eighteen pence, and told me, that it cost him fifteen pence.

The scholar, that often seeks to enjoy the company of wicked boys, never performeth his duty. He leaveth off his care and diligence, and changeth the smiles of his master for frowns.

An industrious and faithful school master deserveth well of his country: For he teacheth his scholars to obey their king, and to deserve as well as may be of the commonwealth.

A person of an ingenuous temper is troubled in mind, when he hath provoked his friends to anger, and desires nothing more than the recovery of their favour.

M

The

bens murex, et jam croceus lutum.

Alius gaudeo perfusus sanguis frater, et muto domus et dulcis limen exilium, et quero patria jacens sub alius sol.

Et qui credo iste honor, qui tendo, bene emo vita.

Mercator nunquam ditescio, qui emo merx mina centum, et revendo idem denarius centum.

Liber hic valeo drachma septem, sed bibliopola vendo ego denarius octodecem, dicoque consto sui denarius quindecim.

Discipulus iste, qui sæpe do opera, ut fruor consortium malus, nunquam fungor officium suus. Supersedeo cura atque diligentia, et muto favor magister riga.

Ludimagister sedulus et fidus mereor bene a patria suus; doceo enim discipulus obtempero rex suus, et mereor quam optime respublica.

Homo indoles ingenuus turbo animus, cum irritio amicus suus, et cupio nihil ardentem, quam ut restituo in gratia is.

Vir,

The man, who doth not pursue his enemy with curses, nor maul him with darts, but exchanges resentment for friendship is worthy to be loved.

Such was the slaughter of the scattered soldiers, that the Athenians sustained more damage in that battle, than they caused in the former; and so great was the despair among the Athenians, that immediately they changed their general Alcibiades for Conon.

Vir, qui non insector inimicus maledictum, aut incesso is jaculum, sed muto ira amicitia, sum dignus amo.

Tantus sum cædes palans miles, ut Atheniensis accipio plus vulnus in is prælium, quam do in superior; et tantus sum desperatio apud Atheniensis, ut statim muto dux Alcibiades Conon.

C H A P. XXXIII.

Verbs govern an Ablative of the Noun, that Signifies the *Instrument, Cause, or Manner* of acting.

The Gerund in *do*, of the Ablative, is frequently used as the *Instrument, Cause, or Manner* of acting.

HE that correcteth his son with a rod, doth him good; and he that reduceth him to obedience, by arguments, is wise: For if the judgment be informed by reason, it will be of more moment, than if the memory be refreshed with stripes.

The manners of men are changed by adversity, as well as by prosperity.

They

QUI corrigo filius suus virga, benefacio ille, et qui reduco ille ad obedientia argumentum, sum sapiens: Nam si iudicium is informo ratio, sum momentum magnus, quam si memoria reficior verber.

Mos homo muto adversus res, perinde atque prosper.

Insequor

They followed them with their swords, and killed abundance of them.

The Helvetii are cooped in on all sides, by the nature of the place.

We hoped we should satisfy our country, by our blood and wounds.

Philip followed his son Alexander with his drawn sword, being hardly held from the murder of his son, by the entreaties of his friends; Wherefore Alexander betook himself with his mother, into Epire, to his uncle, and from thence to the king of the Illyrians, and scarcely was he reconciled to his father, who recalled him, and with difficulty obliged, by the entreaties of his relations, to return.

After Alexander had received the cup, at the feast to which Medius Thessalus invited him, he groaned in the middle of his draught as if stabbed with a dart; and being carried out of the feast half alive, he was racked with so much pain, that he called for his sword, with which to kill himself.

Cæsar was esteemed great for his favours and generosity; Cato, for the integrity of his mind.

Clay hardens and wax softens, by one and the same fire.

Pausanias feasted after the manner of the Persians, more luxuriously

Insequor is gladius, et interficio magnus is numerus.

Helvetii contineo undique natura locus.

Spero ego satisfacio patria sanguis noster vulnusque.

Philippus confector filius suus Alexander strictus gladius, ægrè exoratus a cædes filias preces amicus; quamobrem Alexander confero sui mater, in Epirus, avunculus, et inde rex Illyrius, ægrè que mitigo patris; qui revoco is, vixque repulsus preces cognatus redeo.

Postquam Alexander accipio poculum in convivium qui Medius Thessalus voco is, ingemisco in medius potio, veluti confusus telum; elatus que e convivium semianimis crucio tantus dolor, ut postco ferrum qui interficio sui.

Cæsar habeo magnus beneficium ac munificentia; Cato, integritas vita.

Limus durefco et sera liquefco unus idemque ignis.

Pausanias epulor, mos Persæ, luxuriose quam qui

luxuriously than they, that were with him could endure.

Xerxes was conquered more by the contrivance of Themistocles, than by the arms of Greece.

Alexander stabbed his most dear friend Clitus, with a sword.

Nero fished with golden nets, which he drew with cords of purple silk.

The Metapontini shew, in the temple of Minerva, the iron tools with which Epeus made the Trojan horse.

Antonius fills the houses nigh the walls with the bravest of the soldiers, who forced away the defenders with trees, cudgels, tiles and torches.

Fulvius surrounded the lurking places of the enemy with fire; Posthumius so disarmed them, that he scarce left them iron, by which the earth might be tilled.

The contest was dubious till his army broke into the town. In that battle, being wounded under the breast, he began to faint through loss of blood, yet fought upon his knees, till he killed him by whom he had been wounded.

The Lacedemonians, as they observed the excellent conduct of Alcibiades in every thing, were afraid, lest tempted by the love of his country, he should revolt from them, and return to a good understanding with his countrymen.

The

*qui adsum, possum perpe-
tior.*

*Xerxes vinco magis
consilium Themistocles,
quam arma Græcia.*

*Alexander transfodio
carus suus amicus Clitus,
gladius.*

*Nero piscor aureus re-
te, qui extraho blattens
funis.*

*Metapontini ostento, in
templum Minerva, ferro-
mentum qui Epeus fabrico
Trojanus equus.*

*Antonius compleo tec-
tum propinquus murus
fortis miles, qui deturbo
propugnator trabes, fustis,
tegula et fax.*

*Fulvius sepio latebra
hostis ignis; Posthumius
ita exarma, ut vix relin-
quo ferrum qui terra colat.*

*Certamen sum anceps
donec exercitus irrumpo
in oppidum. In is præ-
lium trajectus sub manu-
ma, capi deficio fluxus
sanguis, tamen prælior
genu, donec occido is a
qui vulnere.*

*Lacedemonii, quum con-
nosco præstans prudenti
Alcibiades in omnis res.
pertimesco, ne ductus amor
patria, decisco ab ipse, et
redeo in gratia cum suis.*

Pastor,

The shepherd wearied by his wife's entreaties, returned into the wood, and found a bitch by the infant, giving her dugs to the little one, and defending it from the wild beasts and birds, and being moved with pity, with which he saw the bitch moved, he carried it to his cottage, whilst the same bitch followed him.

When Alexander was come to the Cuphites, where the enemy waited his coming with two hundred thousand horse, the whole army being wearied no less with the number of their victories, than the fatigue of the war, entreat him with tears, that he would make an end of the war, remember his country, and regard the years of his soldiers.

Gallæcia is very fruitful in brass and lead, and very rich in gold too, so that often with the plough they tear up golden sods. On the confines of this nation there is a golden mountain, which it is reckoned an heinous crime to open with an iron tool; but if at any time the earth is rent with lightning, it is allowed to pick up the gold thus uncovered as a present from the god.

Will not he, conquered by singing, restore to me the goat, which my pipe has deserved by its song?

Pastor, fatigatus preces uxor, revertor in sylva, et invenio canis feminus juxta infans. præbens uber parvulus, et defendens a fera alusque, et matris misericordia, qui video canis motus, defero ad stabulum, dum idem canis prosequor.

Cum Alexander venio ad Cuphites, ubi hostis opperior is adventus cum ducenti mille eques, omnis exercitus fessus, non minus numerus victoria, quam labor bellum, deprecor is lachryma, ut facio finis bellum, memini patria, et respicio annus miles.

Gallæcia sum ubi et æs ac plumbum, dives quoque aurum, adeo ut frequenter aratrum exscindo aureus gleba. In finis hic gens sum facer mons, qui habeo nefas violo ferrum; sed si quando terra proscindo fulgor, permitto colligo aurum sic detectus velut deus munus.

An ille, victus cantandum, reddo ego caper, qui meus fistula n. creo carmen?

The Muses give to you these oaten pipes, which before they had given to old *Afræus*, with which he was wont, by singing, to call the sturdy wild ashes from the mountains.

The cold snake in the meadows is frozen, by singing.

Musæ do ego hic calamus qui do fenex Afræus, qui soleo, cantandum, deduco rigidus arnus mons.

Frigidus anguis, in pratum, gelo cantandum.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Passive Verbs of *Clothing, Asking, Entreating, Teaching, Warning, Undressing*, and *celo* in the Passive, govern an Accusative of the Thing.

Passive Verbs, in general, govern the same Case as their Actives.

These Verbs, *exulo, fio, liceo, vapulo*, and *væneo*, when used in the Passive Sense, govern an Ablative of the *Agent*, or *Doer*, with these Prepositions *a, ab, abs*.

CICERO, the famous Roman orator, was banished by *Clodius*; but the memory of his excellent virtue remained among the citizens of Rome: For, being recalled from his exile, he was called the father of his country, which title properly belonged to kings.

The boy is deservedly beaten by his master, who, whilst he readeth many learned authors,

CICERO, orator ille Romanus cæleber, exulo a Clodius; sed memoria virtus is eximus supersto inter cives Romanus; Nam revocatus ad exilium suus, vocor pater patria, qui titulus competo rex solus.

Puer merito vapulo a magister suus, qui, dum lego auctor multus doctus,

thors, from whom he may learn elegance, eloquence, and morality, only readeth and remembereth nothing.

Silver is valued much, gold is valued more, but virtue ought to be valued most.

The sayings of wise men are sometimes little esteemed; but the words of a fool are always regarded less.

He was accused of most heinous crimes, but he was cleared of all, and deservedly: For he was accused of faults of which he was innocent.

Albucilla, the famous woman, was accused of disaffection towards the Emperor; but she was accused of this crime by her enemies.

One was condemned for murder, another was condemned for extortion, and a third was condemned for bribery and the publick money.

If any Roman knight was seen to have a horse somewhat lean, or not very sleek, he was censured for clownish carelessness.

We are admonished of many things, by our friends; do not therefore take it ill, that you are put in mind of your duty.

Death is rightly compared to sleep, and fortune is very rightly compared to the wind, to which it is very like.

Speech

a qui possum discō elegantia, eloquentia, et moralitas, tamen lego solummodo et reminiscor nihil.

Argentum aestimo magnum, aurum aestimo plus, sed virtus debeo aestimo plurimum.

Dictum sapiens interdum parvum existimo; sed verbum stultus minor semper duco.

Accuso gravis scelus, sed absolvo omnis, et merito: Nam arguo culpa, qui sum insons.

Albucilla, famosus mulier, defero impietas in princeps; sed compello hic crimen ab inimicus.

Alius damno cædas, alius damno repetundæ, alius condemnno ambitus et publicus pecunia.

Si quis Romanus equos videor habeo equus graecitentus, aut parum nitidus, noto impolitia.

Admoneo multus ab amicus; nolo igitur agere fero u officium tuus commoneo.

Mors recte compara somnus, et fortuna recte comparo ventus, qui sum similis.

Sermo

Speech is given to all, wisdom to few; and the way to true happiness is shewn to us from the word of God only.

Virtue can neither be forced away, nor stolen away from any one: But nobody can serve pleasure and virtue together.

The consul, when he understood these things were designed, calls the Senate; and Silanus was first asked his opinion, because he was Consul Elect.

Nor was the earth called upon for corn and food only, but riches are dug up, and now the iron comes out, and gold more hurtful than iron.

Neither are bees satisfied with hather, nor kids with leaves, nor cruel love with tears.

The man is amused with trifles, he is surfeited with feasting; but the sea is not overcharged with waters. The vallies are covered with darkness, though the mountains are clothed with snow.

Thrasylulus made a law, that nobody should be accused of past things, nor punished; and they called that an act of oblivion.

Cato was asked his opinion, and made a speech of this kind.

Sermo do cunctus, sapientia paucus; et via ad verus felicitas ostendo ego ex verbum Deus solus. Virtus nec possum eripio, nec surripio quisquam. At nemo possum servio voluptas et virtus simul.

Consul, ubi cognosco is paro, convoco Senatus; et Silanus primus rogo sententia, quod sum Consul Designatus.

Nec humus tantum posco seges alimentumque, sed opes effoda jamque ferrum prodeo, et aurum nocens ferrum.

Nec cytissus, saturo apis, nec frons capella, nec lachrymà crudelis amor.

Homo oblecto nugæ onero epulæ; at fretum non satio aqua. Vallis tenebræ tego, licet mons amicio nix.

Thrasylulus fero lex, ne quis accuso anteactæ res, neve multo; appelloque is lex oblivio.

Cato rogo sententia, et habeo oratio hujuscemodi.

C H A P. XXXV.

The *Agent*, or *Doer*, after Passive Verbs, is put in the Dative, and often in the Ablative with these Prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *abs*.

HE that is of a courteous behaviour, is beloved by all: But he that is of clownish manners, is esteemed by none.

Do not trust a man, by whom thou hast been once deceived.

He is miserable, who neither loves any one, nor is himself beloved by any one.

The affairs of a good man are never neglected by God.

Carthage was destroyed by the famous general Scipio Africanus.

Learning and virtue are sought by few; pleasure by many.

We are so formed by nature, that we do not seem made for sport and jest.

Then he enters upon the Persian war, begun by his father; and being busy in the preparations, he is informed, that the Athenians and Thebans had revolted from him to the Persians; and that the adviser of the revolt was Demosthenes, corrupted by the Persians by a great sum of gold: For he had declared in the

*QUI sum gestus comis
amo ab omnis: Sed
qui sum mos rusticus, as-
timo a nullus.*

*Ne fido homo a qui se-
mel decipio.*

*Miser sum, qui neque
dilige quisquam, nec ipse
dilige ab ullus.*

*Res bonus vir nunquam
negligo a Deus.*

*Carthago deleo a cele-
ber dux Scipio Africanus.*

*Doctrina et virtus ap-
peto a paucus; voluptas,
a plurimus.*

*Ita genero a natura,
ut non videor factus ad
ludusque jocus.*

*Deinde aggredior bellum
Persicus, inchoatus a pater:
et occupatus in apparatus,
fo certior Atheniensis et
Thebanus desidio ab sui ad
Persa, et auctor is desidio
sum Demosthenes, corrup-
tus Persa magnus pondus
aurum: Nam affirmo in
cancio populus, omnis
copiae*

the assembly of the people, that all the army of the Macedonians, with their king, had been cut of by the Triballi.

The Fathers sent a letter to M. Claudius, that he would relieve the commonwealth, forsaken by his colleague, and would nominate him Dictator, whom the people had ordered. Accordingly Q. Fulvius was nominated Dictator by Claudius the Consul; and according to the same vote of the people, P. Licinius Crassus, the high priest, was nominated master of the horse, by Q. Fulvius.

Nor was Darius wanting to himself; he went about encouraging his men, and putting them in mind of the ancient glory of the Persians, and the perpetual possession of the empire, given him by the gods.

Annibal got Marcellus's ring together with his body; Crispinus fearing some trick would be played with it by the Carthaginians, sent messengers about the neighbouring cities, that his colleague was slain, and the enemy had gotten his ring, that they should not believe any letters written in the name of Marcellus.

For these achievements Codomanus is set over the Armenians, and after the death of king Ochus, is made king by the people, for his
former

copiæ Macedo, cum rex, delco a Triballi.

Pater mitto literæ M. Claudius, ut subvenio Respublica desertus, a Collega, dico que Dictator, qui populus jubeo. Ita Q. Fulvius dico Dictator a Claudius Consul; et ex idem plebiscitum P. Licinius Crassus, pontifex maximus, dico magister eques a Q. Fulvius.

Nec Darius desum fui, circumeo hortans suos, et admonens vetus gloria Persa, et perpetuus possessio imperium datus sui a deus.

Annibal potior annulus Marcellus, simul cum corpus; Crispinus metuens ne qui dolus necto a Pæni, mitto nuncius circa proximus civitas occido collega, et hostis potior annulus is, ne quis credo litera compositus nomen Marcellus.

Ob hic decus, Codomanus proficio Armenia, et post mors Ochus, constituo rex a populus propter pristinus virtus, honoratus

former bravery, being honoured by the name of Darius, lest any thing should be wanting to royal majesty, and waged war with Alexander with great courage. At last being conquered by Alexander and slain by his relations, he ended his life together with the empire of the Persians.

There were in Cyrus's army ten thousand Greeks, who conquered in the wing in which they stood; and, after Cyrus's death, could neither be conquered by so great an army, nor taken by stratagem; and returning through so many wild and barbarous nations, defended themselves by their courage to the borders of their country.

Whilst these things are doing, he is acquainted by the discovery of a prisoner, that a plot was laid for him by Alexander Lyncestes, the son in law of Antipater, who had been set over Macedonia; for which reason, fearing, lest if he should be slain, some tumult would arise in Macedonia, he kept him in chains.

Whilst the Gauls plundered the ships, they are cut in pieces by the Rowers and a part of the army, which had fled thither with their wives and children.

Queen Thessalonice, the lady of Cassander, was slain by her son Antipater, though she

tus nomen Darius, ne quis desum regius majestas, et gero bellum cum Alexander magnus virtus. Postremo victus ab Alexander, et occisus a suis, finis vita pariter cum imperium Persa.

Sum mille decem Græcus in Cyrus exercitus, qui vinco in cornu in qui sto; et post Cyrus mors neque possum vinco a tantus exercitus, nec capio dolus; et revertens per tot indomitus et barbarus gens, defendo sui virtus suis, usque ad terminus patria.

Dum hic ago, fit certior indicium captivus, insidiæ paro sui ab Alexander Lyncestes, Antipater gener qui præpono Macedonia; ob qui causatimens, ne si interficio, quis motus orior in Macedonia, habeo is in vinculum.

Dum Galli diripio navis, trucido remex et pars exercitus, qui confugio eo cum conjux et liberi.

Regina Thessalonice, uxor Cassander, occido a filius Antipater, cum deprecor

she begged her life by his mother's breasts.

He called gods and men to witness, that he had been wanting in no place or time ; but where the enemy carried their arms, thither he repaired with all the speed he could ; and that it could hardly be said, whether the war was carried on more boldly by him, or more timorously by the enemy.

Artabanus being more secure of Artaxerxes, who was but a boy, pretends that the king had been slain by Darius, who was a man, that he might the sooner obtain the kingdom.

precor vitâ per ubi maternus.

*Testor deus homoque
sui desum nullus locus nec
tempus, quin ubi hostis ar-
ma circumfero, eo tendo
quantus maximus possum
celeritas ; sed vix dico
possum utrum bellum gero
audacius a fui, an sagacius
ab hostis.*

*Artabanus securus de
Artaxerxes, qui puer ad-
modum sum, fingo rex oc-
cido a Darius, qui jam
vir sum, ut maturius po-
tior regnum.*

CHAR.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Verbs of the Third Person only may govern a Noun, in the Accusative.

Interest and *refert* govern the Genitive.

Libet, licet, placet and all *Third Personal Verbs*, having *to*, or *for*, after them, govern the Dative.

Deacet, delectat, fallit, fugit, juvat, latet, oportet, piget, and *præterit*, govern an Accusative of the Person with the Infinitive.

Miserescit, miseret, piget, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, and *pertaxum est*, govern an Accusative of the Person, and Genitive of the Thing.

Attinet, pertinet, and *spectat* govern the Accusative with the Prepositions *ad* and *in*.

IT concerns boys to beware of evil company, as they would avoid a plague.

It concerns me and all men to look to ourselves.

It matters little, whether he that instructeth thee, be great, if he be but good.

If it please God, physick shall do a man good.

It is expedient for those, who would enjoy inward peace to believe God's omnipotency. It is manifest to me, that he rules the world; and it is clear to the eyes of his servants, that his providence favours good men.

REVERT *puer magnus caveo a consortium malus, ut volo fugio pestis.*

Interest meus et omnis prospicio ego ipse.

Parvus refert an qui etudio tu sum magnus, modo sum bonus.

Si placet Deus, phar-

maceutum profum homo.
Expediit ille, qui volo fruior pax internus, credo omnipotentia Deus. Constat ego, ille gubernomundus; et liquet oculus Jervus is; providentia ipse faveo bonus.

N

It

Decet

It becometh a wise man to restrain his tongue with the bridle of reason; it delighteth him to laugh at the folly of flatterers; it behoveth a man of little wisdom to hold his peace that he may conceal his folly.

It belongs to young men to be silent in company and to mind what others say; and, yet, when they can produce something worthy of notice, which none else thought on, it belongs to them to speak.

Good men are weary of their lives among the wicked; it irketh them to see their blindness; but they themselves are not ashamed of their wickedness, nor do they repent of their vices, till God please to open their eyes.

Good men only truly repent of their sins and follies. Those persons that repent of their good deeds, are of most base minds.

When the master layeth on the scholars any new commands, they seem to rejoice and are very forward to obey them at first: For novelty mightily pleases them; but they are soon weary of them, and forget their duty, and it is irksome to perform those commands, they just now seemed so ready to do.

The master pitieth the scholar's ignorance, but the scholar doth not pity himself, neither

Decet sapiens cohibere lingua suus frenum ratio; delectat is irrideo stultitia garrulus; oportet parum sapiens taceo, celo stultitia suus.

Speñat, ad adolescens taceo in conventus, et anti-maduerto quid alius dico; et, tamen, cum queo profero aliquid, qui fugio cæteri, pertinet ad is loquor.

Tædet bonus vita suus inter impius; piget ille cerno cæcitas is; at non pudet ipse impietas suus, nec pænitet is vitium, donec placet Deus aperio oculus ille.

Verè pænitet bonus solus peccatum et vanitas. Ille qui pænitet actio suus bonus, sum animus inhonestus.

Cum magister impono discipulus mandatum aliquis novus, videor gaudet, et sum promptus ad obedi ad primum. Novitas enim magnatere placeo ille; sed cito piget ille is, obliviscor officium suus, et tædet ille exequor mandatum ille, qui modo videor ita paratus ad præsto.

Miseret præceptor ignorantia discipulus, sed non miserefcit discipulus su

neither doth it repent him of his fault.

When it pleaseth God, he can change evil into the temporal good of those that please him; it does not become men to be angry with divine providence: Contentment becomes christians.

Some men begin to repent of their negligence, when they have ruined themselves by their neglect; and some begin to repent of their talkativeness, when they have betrayed and hurt their friends by their licentious tongues.

After the mind of Alexander was composed, and consideration succeeded in the place of passion, he considered one while the person of him whom he had slain, another the cause for which he had slain him, and began to be sorry for the fact.

Whom, says the Consul Quintus, have the dastardly enemies despised? Us the Consuls, or you Romans? If the fault be in us, take away our power; and if that be small, punish us: If the fault be in you, let none of the gods or men punish your faults; do you only repent of them.

A misunderstanding of the States is the bane of this city, says the Consul, whilst you are weary of the Patricians, and we of the Plebeian magistrates. What do you mean,

sui ipse, nec pœnitet sui peccatum.

Cum placeo Deus, possum muto malum in bonum temporalis is qui placeo sui; non decet homo irascor providentia divinus: Contentatio duceo christianus.

Incipio pœnitet nonnullus negligentia suus, cum redigo sui ad exitium neglectus suus; et capi pœnitet aliquis garrulitas, cum prodo et lædo amicus lingua suus effranatus.

Postquam animus Alexander conquiesco, et aestimatio succedo in locus ira, considero modò persona is qui occido, modò causa propter qui occido, et capi piget is factum.

Quis, inquam Consul Quintus, ignavissimus hostis contemno? Ego Consul, an tu Quirites. Si culpa sum in ego, aufero imperium; et si is sum parvum, punio ego; Si culpa sum in tu, nemo deus aut homo punio vester peccatum; tu tantum pœnitet is.

Discordia Ordo sum pestis hic urbs, inquam, Consul, dum tædet tu Patricius, ego Plebeius magistratus. Quis volo, obsecro? Concupio Tribu-

rus

I beseech you? You desired Tribunes of the common people, we granted them. You desired the Decemviri, we suffered them to be made. You were weary of the Decemviri, we forced them to lay down their power.

He deserves punishment, that is not ashamed of his fault; but he that is sorry and ashamed of his fault, is almost innocent, and will beware lest he commit any such thing again; he remembers the sorrow and shame, that tormented his mind, and will avoid them.

It concerns all men to practise virtue; and it concerns the publick, that all should promote peace and concord; and it likewise concerns the common good, that youth be well educated.

When Lysimachus, king of Thrace, a wild and barbarous nation near the Euxine sea, had commanded, that Theodorus should be crucified; it nothing concerns me, says Theodorus, whether I rot in the ground or on high.

It happened to the young man, that he was very dear to the Senate.

It happened ill for them, but very well for you, if you please to hear.

It contributes to health to live according to nature, and it is proper for us so to live.

They

nus plebs, ego concedo. Desidero Decemviri, ego patior creo. Tædet tui Decemviri, cogo is abdicæ magistratus.

Mereor pena, qui non pudet peccatum; sed qui pœnitet et pudet peccatum, sum pene innocens, et caveo ne committo quis talis denuo; reminiscor dolor et pudor, qui ango animus, et fugio is.

Interest omnis colò virtus, et interest respublica, ut omnis promoveo pax et concordia; atque etiam multum interest communis utilitas, juventus, probe institua.

Cum Lysimachus, rex Thracia, ferus et barbarus gens prope mare Euxinus, jubeo Theodorus ago in crux; nihil refert meus, inquam Theodorus, humasne an sublime putresco.

Contigit adolescens, ut sum carus Senatui.

Male evenit ille, at bene tu, si placet tu audio.

Conducit salus vivo e natura, et expedit ego ita vivo.

Peto

They beg, that they may be allowed to pass their days in exile, and it pleases me to allow them.

Jove has not leisure to attend on small affairs but it is better for us to be silent than to speak.

It appears to all, that this man aims at sovereignty, nay I am clear to swear it.

It concerns all men to practise virtue, and it concerns all men to pity the miserable.

It concerns me, it concerns you and the commonwealth, that you do your duty.

It concerns thee not to believe rashly, and it concerns thee to know thyself.

Cæsar used to say, that it did not so much concern him, as the state, that he should be preserved.

Caligula suffered the writings of Labienus to be searched and read, since it very much concerned him, that every action should be transmitted to posterity.

It concerns you, that are fathers, to take care that your children be well educated, and it concerns children to obey their parents.

I look for death as the end of my miseries: But I pity you, against whom wars and battles are prepared.

Sulpicius, Tribune of the Commons, after he had acquired the greatest honour,

*Peto, ut licet ille ago
et as in exilium, et libet
ego sino.*

*Non vacat Jupiter ad
sum exiguus res; sed præ-
stat ego taceo quam lo-
quor.*

*Apparet omnis hic homo
affecto imperium, imo liquet
ego de jero.*

*Refert omnis colo vir-
tus, et interest omnis mis-
ereor miser.*

*Refert meus, refert tu-
us, et respublica, ut tu
fungor officium.*

*Refert tuus non credo
temere, et interest tuus
nos, tu ipse.*

*Cæsar soleo dico, non
tam interest suus, quam
respublica, uti salvus sum.*

*Caligula permitto scrip-
tum Labienus requiro at
lectito, quando maxime in-
terest suus, ut quisque
factum tradat posteris.*

*Interest vester, qui pa-
ter sum, curo ut liberi
probe instituo, et refert
liberi obedio parens.*

*Expecto mors ut finis
miseria: Sed miseret ego
tu adversus qui prælium
et acies paro.*

*Sulpicius, Tribunus
Plubs, cum quæro magnus
dignitas, fero multus per-
niciosus.*

made many destructive laws, as if he had been sorry for, and weary of his former virtues.

It becomes all men to be free from hatred, love, wrath and compassion, when they deliberate about doubtful matters.

There are boys that delight to lead an idle life, and there are boys that take pleasure to ply their studies.

It behoves men to reckon, that God sees all things, that all things are full of God.

Honesty hurts nobody: But knavery, though it seems to profit a man, is very pernicious to a man's credit, which all wise men value more than money; and very often it is hurtful to a man's estate and life, which fools value more than all things else. It therefore, concerns all men to beware of, and avoid injustice.

Julian was a man of great eloquence, of a quick and most tenacious memory, liberal to his friends, as became so great a prince to be; he was greedy of glory; and not unlike Marcus Antonius, whom he made it his business to imitate: He made war upon the Parthians, in which expedition I was likewise present.

King Darius's mother, who till that day had not been weary of her life, when she heard that Alexander was dead

*nicius lex, quasi piget
ac tædet is pristinus vir-
tus.*

*Decet omnis homo sum
vacuus ab odium, amicitia,
ira, atque misericordia,
cum consilio de res
dubius.*

*Sum puer, qui delectat
segnis traduco vita, et
sum puer, qui studium in-
vigilo iuvat.*

*Oportet homo, existimo,
Deus cerno omnis, omnis
Deus plenus sum.*

*Probitas noceo nemo:
Sed improbitas, etsi videor
prosum homo, sum perni-
ciosus existimatio homo, qui
omnis sapiens æstimo plus
quam pecunia; et sæpe
sum perniciosus homo res
et vita, qui stultus facio
plus quam alius omnis.
Refert igitur, omnis ca-
ueo et vito injustitia.*

*Julianus sum vir in-
gens facundia, promptus
et tenax memoria, libera-
lis in amicus, ut decet
tantus princeps sum; sum
avidus gloria; et non
absumilis Marcus Antoni-
us, qui æmulor studeo:
Infero bellum Parthi, qui
expeditio ego quoque in-
ter sum.*

*Rex Darius mater,
qui in is dies non tædet
vita, cum audio Alexan-
der morior, infero manus
sui*

dead, laid violent hands upon herself; not that she preferred an enemy before a son, but because she had experienced the duty of a son, in him, whom she had feared as an enemy.

You see, says Eumenes, the dress and ornaments of your general; which not any of my enemies has put upon me, for that would be a comfort to me. You have made me of a general a prisoner. One thing I beg, that you would let me die among yourselves: For it signifies nothing to Antigonus how, or where I fall. If I obtain this, I free you from your oath.

sui ipse; non quod præfero hostis filius, sed quod experior pietas filius in te, qui timeo ut hostis.

Cerno, inquam Eumenes, habitus atque ornamentum dux vester; qui non quisquam hostis impono ego, nam hic forem solatium ego. Tu facio ego ex imperator captivus. Unus oro, ut volo ego nrior inter tu: Nam neque interest Antigonus quem admodum aut ubi caedo. Si hic impetora, solido tu iusjurandum.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Adjectives, that take a Genitive, and such Nouns as, *amor, vis, causa, &c.* govern Gerunds in the Genitive Case.

The Gerund in *do*, of the Dative Case, is governed by Adjectives, that signify *Profit, Usefulness, Fitness, &c.*

The Gerund in *do*, of the Ablative is governed by these Prepositions, *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in, pro.*

The Gerund in *dum*, of the Nominative, is used in conjunction with the Verb, *est*; and importing *Necessity*, governs a Dative of the Person,

Person, or Thing, on whom the Necessity falls.

The Gerund in *dum*, of the Accusative, is governed by the Prepositions, *ad, ante, ob* and *propter*.

Gerundial Participles govern the same Case, as the Verbs, from which they are derived, govern.

The *Gerundial Participle*, in conjunction with the Verb *est, or esse*, governs a Dative of the *Person, or Thing, on whom the Necessity falls.*

When the *Gerundial Participle* does not govern a following word, it agrees with its Noun, in *Number, Case and Gender.*

Gerunds that govern the Accusative, and those derived from *abutor, fruor, fungor, potior* and *utor*, may be changed into *Gerundial Participles*, and agree with their Nouns, in *Number, Case and Gender.*

MANY sinners neglect the means of turning to God, till time is past. And when their wishes are in vain, and death approaches, they then desire opportunity of amending their lives.

The lust of governing is more violent than all the other passions.

The gods have given you riches, and the art of enjoying them.

Dionysius oblig'd the physicians to give his father a sleepy dose, lest Dion should have an opportunity of tampering with him. The

MULTUS peccator negligo medium. respisco, usquedum tempus sum prateritus: et cum votum sum vaxus, mors appropinquo, tunc cupio oportunitas corrigo vita suus.

Cupido dominandum sum flagrans cunctus alius affectus.

Deus do tu divitia, arsque fruendum.

Dionysius cogo medicus do pater sopor, ne Dion sum potestas agendum cum is.

Hic

The man is courageous in danger, prudent in his conduct, and skilled in carrying on a war.

He acknowledges himself to be unskilled in pleading, but not unacquainted with war.

I must ride, but you must walk.

We must fight stoutly with our vices.

He must fly, but they must fight, that they may be safe.

Bituminous and nitrous water is good to be drunken.

Nature hath given the frogs legs fit for swimming.

This is common to studying and writing, that good health contributes a great deal to both.

This ink is useful for writing. This seed is proper for sowing. This horse is convenient for riding.

Wisdom provides things to us for living happily.

The Parthians are more disposed to act, than to speak.

As we walk, we will talk together about the great works of God.

Lazy boys are soon discouraged from learning.

No question is now made about living well.

The spirit of the Cantabrians was obstinate in rebelling. The

Hic vir sum fortis ad periculum, prudens ad consilium, et peritus belligerendum.

Fateor sui sum rudis dicendum, at non ignarus bellandum.

Equitandum sum ego, sed ambulandum sum tu.

Pugnandum sum ego fortiter cum vitium noster.

Fugiendum sum is, at dimicandum sum ille, ut sum saluus.

Bituminatus et nitrosus aqua sum utilis bibendum.

Natura do rana crus aptus natandum.

Ille sum communis ediscendum et scribendum, ut hanc valetudo consero plurimum uterque.

Hic atramentum utilis scribendum. Hic semen commodus serendum. Hic equus aptus equitandum.

Sapientia comparo res ego ad beate vivendum.

Parthi sum promptus ad faciendum, quam ad dicendum.

Inter ambulandum, confabulor de magnis operibus Deus.

Ignavus puer cito deterreo a discendum.

Nullus questio movet de bene vivendum.

Animus Cantabri sum pertinax in rebellandum. Canis

The dog by barking discovered the thieves.

Scipio reformed the soldiers, by exercising, rather than by punishing.

Cæsar, by giving, by relieving and forgiving, acquired great glory.

A christian, that hath steadfast hope of living forever, is not angry at divine providence, when it commands him to go hence: Because he is sure of seeing God.

A desire to die is blameable, when it proceeds only from impatience by reason of trouble: But, he that is desirous of living, when his death would be more honourable to God and religion, wants christian courage.

Scholars may learn by teaching one another: For they fasten the things they have formerly learned more steadfastly in their memories, by repeating them over.

Among boys, as well as among men, some are obstinate in offending, while others learn prudence from observing the punishment of others.

Many are ready to ask, how you do, who are not forward to help on your welfare: But a true friend will pity you, and will be ready to use his utmost endeavours to free you from trouble.

Canis latrandum prodo fur.

Scipio corrigo miles exercendum magis quam puniendum.

Cæsar, dandum, sublevandum, et ignoscendum, magnus gloria adipiscor.

Christianus, qui habeo spes firmus vivo in æternus, non irascor providentia divinus, cum jubeo abeo hinc: Quia sum certus video Deus.

Cupido morior sum culpabilis, cum provenio solum ab impatientia ob molestia: Sed, qui sum cupidus vivo, cum mors sum magis in honor Deus et religio, carco fortituda christianus.

Discipulus possum discoco doceo sui invicem: Enim infigo qui olim discollie memoria repeto is.

Inter puer, æque ac inter vir, alius sum contumax delinquendum, dum alius disco prudentia observandum parna alius.

Multus sum promptus ad rogo, quomodo valeo, qui non sum promptus ad promoveo salus tuus: Sed amicus verus misereor tu; et sum paratus ad conor pro virilis, ut expedio tu e molestia.

It

Difficile

It is hard to move him, that is accustomed to do evil ; custom is a second nature.

At saying lessons, other boys ought not to speak, but those only that are saying ; at eating, boys ought to sit still, and not to talk.

They must strive with their utmost might, that desire to become learned.

Friends ought to be admonished and chidden, and that ought to be taken kindly, which is done with good intention.

Claudius was a modest man, tenacious of what was just, and fit for managing the Commonwealth.

The boy is fit for bearing the burden ; but this place is fit for spreading the nets.

All the cities of Greece contributed money for equipping a fleet, and raising an army.

Men use care in purchasing a horse, and are negligent in choosing friends.

A general must endeavour to accustom his soldiers to observe the tricks, plots, and stratagems of the enemy, and what is proper to pursue and what to avoid.

After a long series of ages, the bird Phoenix came into Egypt, and furnished an occasion to the most learned of the natives

Difficilis sum moveo ille, qui sum assuetus ad malefacio ; altera natura sum consuetudo.

Inter reddo lectio, non oportet puer alius loquor, sed reddens solum ; inter edo, oportet puer quietè sedeo et taceo.

Nitor sum ille pro virilis, qui cupio fio doctus.

Amicus sum monendus et objurgandus, et is sum accipiendus amice, qui benevole fio.

Claudius sum vir modestus, tenax justum, et idoneus gerendus Respublica.

Puer sum par ferendus onus, sed hic locus sum habilis pandendus rete.

Omnis civitas Græcia do pecunia ad ædificandum classis, et comparandus exercitus.

Homo adhibeo cura in parandus equus, et sum negligens in deligendus amicus.

Laborandum sum dux, ut consuefacio miles cognosco dolus, infidia, et artificium hostis, et quis convenit sequor quisque vito.

Post longus ambitus seculum, avis Phœnix venio in Ægyptus, præbeoque materies doctus indigena

natives and Greeks of making speculations on that prodigy.

In that battle the general was wounded; who, when he saw his men slaughtered, demanded by a crier the bodies of the slain for burial; for this among the Greeks is a sign of the victory's being yielded up: With which concession the Thebans being content, gave the signal of giving quarter.

How desperately the fight was maintained, the event shewed; none of the enemy survived the battle. The place, that every one had taken in fighting, he covered with his body.

Eumenes being thus received by the Argyraspides, by degrees assumes the command; first by admonishing, and then by gently correcting, he brought it to pass, that nothing could be done in the camp without him.

Clearchus thought the disagreement of the people an opportunity of seizing the government.

All the sons of Hanno, not only those, that appeared fit for assuming the government, but the rest also, and all his relations are delivered up to punishment; that not one of so wicked a family might be left, either to imitate his villainy, or revenge his death.

gena et Græcus differendum super is miraculum.

In is prælium dux valnero; qui, cum video suus cædo, postea per præcò corpus interfectis aut sepultura; hic enim apud Græcis signum victoria traditus: Qui confesso Thebanus contentus; do signum parcendum.

Quam atrociter dimico, eventus doceo; nemo hostis super sum bellum. Qui locus quisque in pugnandum habeo, corpus tego.

Eumenes ita receptus Argyraspidæ, paulatim usurpo imperium; primum monendum, mox blande corrigendum, effectiv, ut nihil possum ago in castra sine illi.

Clearchus existimo dissensio populus occasio invadendus tyrannus.

Omnis filius Hanno, non tantum is, qui video habilis capeffendus respública, sed cæter quoque, omnisque cognatus, traido supplicium; ne quisquam ex tam nefartus domus super sum, aut imitandus scelus, aut ad ulciscendus mors.

You

Vivo,

You live, not to lay down, but to confirm your audacity.

With what mind, at length, do you suppose, that you ought to bear this? If my servants, indeed, should fear me, in that manner, as all your citizens fear you, I should suppose, that I ought to leave my house: Do you not suppose, that you ought to leave the city?

You have prevailed, not only to neglect the laws and judgments, but also to overturn and break them.

He promised the enjoyment of lusts to some, to others the death of their parents, not only by impelling, but by helping them.

For indeed, Roman Knights, if those things, which had been told me, had not been discovered, yet I supposed, that I ought not to fear too much diligence, in such dangers of the Republick.

This man hath called the Gauls to overturn the foundations of the republick, he hath stirred up the servants, recalled Catiline, assigned us to Cethegus to be assassinated, other citizens to Gabinius to be killed, the city to Cassius to be burned, and all Italy to Catiline to be laid waste and plundered.

Vivo, non ad depono, sed ad confirmo audacia.

Qui animus, tandem, hic tu ferendum puto? Servus meus, mehercule, si metuo me iste pultum, ut omnis civis tuus metuo tu, puto domus meus relinquendus: Non tu arbitro tu urbs relinquendus?

Tu non solum valeo ad negligendus lex et quaestio, verum etiam ad evertendus et perfringendus.

Polliceor alius fructus libido; alius, mors parens, non modo impello, veram etiam adjuvo.

Etenim, Quirites, si is, qui deferor ad ego, non reperior, tamen ego non arbitror ego pertimescendus nimius diligentia, intantus periculum respubli-

lica. Hic arcesso. Gallus ad evertio fundamentum Respublica, concito servitium, Catilina evoco, attribuo ego Cethegus trucido, caeter civis Gabinius interficia, urbs Cassius instamno, et totus Italia Catilina vasto deripioque.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Participles, Gerunds and Supines, govern the same Case, as the Verbs from which they are derived do govern.

Exofus, perofus and pertafus, having an Active Signification, govern the Accusative: Having a Passive Signification, they govern the Dative.

TURNUS puts to death the brethren sent from Lycia and the fields of Apollo, and Menætes, an Arcadian youth, hating the wars in vain.

Victory, hating these my armies, does not thus fly away, that I should refuse to attempt any thing, for such hope.

I do now, indeed submit; and, detesting the contest, I leave it.

If, Almighty Jupiter, thou dost not hate the Trojans even to a man; if, in any respect, thy ancient pity regards human misfortunes, grant, O father, the fleet to escape the burning, and snatch from ruin the slender affairs of Teucer's race.

Melancholy minds occupy the next places; who, innocent have brought death upon themselves with their own hands,

TURNUS *interficio frater missus Lycia et ager Apollo, Menætes, Arcas juvenis exofus bellum nequicquam.*

Victoria, exofus hic manus, non adeo fugio, ut recuso quisquam pro tantus spes.

Nunc cedo equidem; et, exofus pugna, relinquo is.

Si, Jupiter Omnipotens, nondum exofus Trojanus ad unus; si, qui, antiquus pietas respicio humanus labor, do classis evado flamma, pater, et eripio lethum tenuis res Teucris.

Mæstus teneo proximus locus, qui, insons pario letum sui manus, qui perofus

hands, and abhorring the light, cast away their souls.

But it is enough, that they fell once: It would have been enough, that they, almost detesting all the female race, had sinned before.

He who is greedy to heap up riches to himself, nor cares by what unjust arts or means he gets them, treasures up cause for repentance.

He who is skilful in cheating others, hath learned a base art, and fools are wiser than such politicians,

Good magistrates, promoting the publick interest, observing the laws, and favouring virtue, are worthy of honour.

Pausanias too, the other general of the Lacedæmonians, being accused of treachery, went into banishment.

Perseus, forgetting his father's fortune, bade his soldiers remember the old glory of Alexander.

Darius went about encouraging his men, and putting them in mind of the ancient glory of the Persians, and of the perpetual possession of the empire given him by the gods.

The Asiatics, remembering the dignity of Berenice's father, and pitying her hard fortune, sent aid.

Junius Silanus, being asked his opinion concerning those, that were detained in prison,

perosus lux, projicio anima.

Sed satis sum pereo: Sum satis, perosus penitus omnis famineus genus, pecco ante.

Qui sum avidus, accumulo divitiarum sui ipse, nec curo quis iniquus ars vel methodus obineo is, repono causa penitentia.

Qui sum gnarus falli alius, disco ars turpis, et idiota sum sapiens politicus hic.

Bonus magistratus, serviens communis utilitas, parens lex, et favens virtus, sum dignus honor.

Pausanias quoque, alter dux Lacedæmonii, accusatus proditione, ab eo in exilium.

Perseus, oblitus patris fortuna, jubeo suos miles reminiscor vetus gloria Alexander.

Darius circumneo hortans suos, et admonens is vetus gloria Persæ, et perpetuus possessio imperium datus sui a deus.

Asiatici, recordans dignitas pater Berenice, et misertus is indignus fortuna, mitto auxilium.

Junius Silanus, rogatus sententia de hic, qui in

prison, voted, that punishment ought to be inflicted.

Alexander, the king of Egypt, dreading the cruelty of his mother, and preferring a secure and safe life before a kingdom, left her.

Having obtained Egypt without a contest, he goes into Lybia, designing to visit the temple of Jupiter Hammon, and consult him concerning the event of the war.

Boys are not to be glutted with meat: For we cannot use our reason well, being filled with much meat and drink.

Many men, abounding in gold and flowing in wealth, cannot deliver their minds from cares: No possession therefore is to be valued more than virtue.

Tiberius seldom used the Greek language, and abstained from it chiefly in the Senate, insomuch that, being about to mention the word *monopolium*, he asked pardon, because he was obliged to make use of a foreign word.

Sylla, for a long time so behaved himself, that he seemed to have no thought of setting up for the consulship.

There will be no other more seasonable time of delivering ourselves from the dread of the Carthaginians than

in custodia teneo, decetna supplicium sum sumendus.

Alexander, rex Egyptus, timens crudelitas mater, et anteponans securus et tutus vita regnum, relinquo is.

Potitus Egyptus sine certamen, pergo in Lybia, visurus templum Jupiter Hammon, et consulturus is de eventus bellum.

Puer non sum implendus cibus: non enim possum utor mens recte, completus multus cibus et potio.

Multus homo abundans aurum et circumfluens divitiarum, non possum libero animus cura: Nullus possessio igitur estimandus sum magis, quam virtus.

Tiberius raro utor Græcus sermo, abstinentiaque maxime in Senatus, adeo quidem ut, nominaturus vox, monopolium, postulo venia, quod suscitandum sum verbum peregrinum.

Sylla, dum, non sui gerere ut videor habere nullus cogitatio petendum consilium.

Non sum alius opportunus tempus liberandum, ego metus Carthaginienfis quam

than now, whilst they are weak and needy.

After this the Carthaginians sent generals into Sicily, to prosecute the remains of the war, with whom Agathocles made a peace.

It would be tedious to recount what Annibal has done against us and our armies, by plundering our cities and killing our fellow soldiers.

Epaminondas was modest, prudent, steady, wisely using the times, skilled in war, of a great spirit, a lover of truth, merciful, not only bearing with the injuries of the people, but his friends too; he was exercised very much in running and wrestling, and employed a great deal of his application in arms.

Philip sends deputies to Atheas, king of the Scythians, desiring a part of the expence of the siege. Atheas, blaming the rigour of the climate and the barrenness of the land, which did not enrich the Scythians with wealth, replied, that he had no riches wherewith he might satisfy so great a king, and that he thought it more scandalous to do but a little, than to refuse the whole.

Alexander, fond of high titles, ordered himself to be adored. The most violent among the recusants was Callisthenes, which thing brought ruin on him, and on

O 2.

many.

quam nunc, dum sum infirmus et egenus.

Post hic Pani mitto dux in Sicilia, ad persequendum reliquæ bellum, cum qui Agathocles pax facio.

Longus sum recenseo qui Annibal patro in ego. exercitusque noster populandum urbs et interficiendum commilitio.

Epaminondas sum modestus, prudens, gravis, sapienter utens tempus, peritus bellum, magnus animus, diligens veritas, clemens, non solum ferens injuria populus, sed etiam amicus; exerceo plurimum currendum et luctandum, et consumo plurimum studium in arma.

Philippus mitto legatus ad Atheas, rex Scythæ. petens portio impensa subsidio. Atheas, causatus inelephantia cælum, et sterilitas terra, qui nondito Sythæ patrimonium, respondeo, nullus sui oper sum, qui expleo tantus rex, et putot x. pis defun- gor parvus, quam abnus totus.

Alexander, gaudens magnus titulus, jubeo sui adoro. Acer, inter recusans, sum Callisthenes, qui sum exitium ille, et multus princeps Macedonia. Tamen

men.

many of the great men of Macedonia. Nevertheless the custom of saluting the king was retained by the Macedonians.

The Bituriges sent deputies to Cæsar to complain of injuries, and to beg assistance against the Carnutes.

Timoleon took Mamercus, the Italian general, a warlike man and of great power, who had come into Sicily to assist the tyrants.

Just judges, hating bribes and covetousness, are hated by those whose guilt prompts them to avoid the stroke of justice. He is hated by all, hated by gods and men, that is perverted by the love of money to pronounce unjust sentences.

When both the prayers and threats of the deputies were slighted, they came armed to the city, there they call gods and men to witness, that they came not to force, but to recover their country; and would shew their countrymen, that not their courage, but fortune had failed them in the war.

men mos salutandum nec retineo a Macedo.

Bituriges mitto legatus ad Cæsar questum de injuria, et petitum auxilium contra Carnutes.

Timoleon capio Mamercus, Italicus dux, homo bellicosus et potens, qui venio in Sicilia adjutum tyrannus.

Judex justus, perosus mæzus et avaritia, suos exosus ille, qui reatus animo ille evito illius justitia. Ille sum exosus omnis, perosus deus et homo, qui corrumpo amor nummus ad profero. sententia iniquus.

Cum et preces et minæ legatus sperno, armatus ad urbs venio, ibi deus homoque testor, sui venio non expugnatum, sed recuperatum patria; ostentusque civis suus, non virtus, sed fortuna, desum sui in bellum.

C H A P. XXXIX.

A. Nona, or Pronoun, is in the Ablative Case absolute, when joined with a Participle expressed, or understood, and there is no other word to govern it.

GOD being teacher, men will learn ; because nothing can resist his power.

Death approaching, the soul, which did not before believe the word of God concerning eternity, sees future things with much perspicuity ; and conscience accusing, men condemn themselves ; and hell being foreseen, with which God threatened them, they tremble.

This matter being proposed to a council, when he found they all thought the same thing, he appoints the next day for the battle.

The Roman people after Cæsar and Pompey were slain, seemed to have returned to their former state of liberty.

Whilst our cavalry were coming up, the enemy shewed their foot suddenly, which they had planted in ambuscade.

When these things were told at Rome, the Senate gave the command of the Achaian war to the consul.

The

DEUS doctor, homo discipulo; nihil enim possum resisto potentia is.

Mors appropinquans, anima, qui non antè credo verbum Deus de eternitas, video futurus perspicuitas multus ; et conscientia accusans, vir damnato sui ; et prævisus infernum, qui Deus minor illo, timeo.

Hic res delictus ad concilium, cum cognosco omnis sentio idem, constitutus proximus dies pugna.

Populus Romanus, Cæsar et Pompeius trucidatus, videor redeo in pristinus status libertas.

Noster equitatus adventans, hostis subito ostendit pedestris copia, qui colloco in insidiæ.

Hic res nunciatus Roma, Senatus decerno summa Achaicus bellum consul.

Hostis,

The enemy, after they knew of his coming, having raised great forces, attacked our army in their march.

Lævinus, after having recovered all Sicily, after having humbled Macedonia, returned with great joy to Rome.

Drawing out his forces about break of day, and having formed them into two lines, he waited to see what measures the enemy would take.

Nero committed many parricides; after having put to death his brother, wife and mother, he fired the city.

In the room of Æneas, Ascanius his son succeeded; who leaving Lavinium, built Long Alba, which was the metropolis of the kingdom for three hundred years.

Antiochus, being cut off with all his army in Parthia, his brother Demetrius being delivered from the siege of the Parthians, whilst all Syria was in mourning for the loss of the army, as if the wars, which he and his brother had made upon the Parthians, in which the one had been taken, and the other slain, had succeeded happily, resolves to make war upon Egypt.

Orofernes, having entered into an alliance with the Antiochians, when offended at Demetrius, resolves to drive them out of his kingdom, by whom he had been restored,

When

*Hostis, cognitus is ad-
ventus, coactus magnus
copia, adior noster ag-
men in iter.*

*Lævinus, omnis Sicilia
receptus, Macedonia frac-
tus, cum ingens gloria
Roma regredior.*

*Productus copia pri-
mus lux, et duplex acies
institutus, expecto quid
consilium hostis capio.*

*Nero multus parricidi-
um committo; frater ux-
or, et mater interfectus,
urbs Roma incendio.*

*In locus Æneas, Af-
canius filius succedo; qui,
relictus Lavinium, condo
Alba Longa, qui sum ca-
put regnum per trecenti
annus.*

*Antiochus, deletus om-
nis copia in Parthia, fra-
ter is Demetrius liberatus
obsidio Parthus, cum om-
nis Syria sum in luctus
propter amissus exercitus,
quasi bellum, qui ipse et
frater infero Parthus, in
qui alter capio, alter oc-
cido, cedo prospere, statuo
bellum infero Ægyptus.*

*Orofernes, iniens. so-
cietas Antiochenus, tunc
offensus Demetrius, con-
stituo pello ipse regnum,
qui restituo. Demetrius,
cognitus hic, parco vita*

is,

When Demetrius knew this, he spared his life, lest Ariarathes should be delivered from the fear of war; but orders him to be kept bound.

The Sotiates big with their former victories, thought the whole preservation of Aquitain depended on their valour. But our men desired it should be seen, what they could do without their general and the other legions, a young man being their leader. At last, the enemy turned their backs, a great number of whom being slain, Crassus began to assault the town of the Sotiates.

Having thus encouraged his soldiers, he made war upon the Romans. But king Ptolemy being dead in Egypt, the kingdom and his wife, queen Cleopatra, are delivered to him, who governed Cyrene.

You know, that those, whom I have mentioned just now, having carried their empire beyond the Ionian sea, even into Sicily, set no bounds to their greediness, before they lost their whole empire; and their harbours and ships being delivered to the enemy, received a garrison into their city.

Galba, having fought some successful skirmishes, and having taken several of their forts, deputies too being sent to him from all parts, and a peace

is, ne Ariarathes liberometus bellum; sed jubentis custodia vinculus.

Sotiates, fretus superior victoria, puto salus totius Aquitania pendet ex virtus suus. Noster autem cupio perspicio quis possum facio sine imperator et reliquis legio, adolescens dux. Tandem hostis verto tergum, qui magnus numerus interfectus, Crassus cepi oppugno oppidum Sotiates.

Sic excito miles, bellum infero Romanus. At Ptolemaeus rex mortuus in Aegyptus regnum, et uxor Cleopatra regina defero is, qui gubernat Cyrena.

Scio is, qui memini modo, profero imperium ultra mare Ionius, usque in Sicilia impono nullus modus cupiditas, antequam amitto totus imperium; et portus navisque tradeo hostis recipio praesidium in urbs.

Galba, secundus aliquot praelium factus, expugnatusque complures in castellum, legatus quoque missus ad is undique, et
pac

peace concluded, resolves to quarter two cohorts among the Nantuates, and to winter himself with the other cohorts of that legion in a village of the Veragri, which is called Octodurus; and as it was divided in two parts by a torrent, one part of the village he assigned to the Gauls, the other he allotted for the cohorts to winter in.

Now, the day declining, she seeks the same entertainments, and demands to hear again the Trojan misfortunes, and hangs again from the mouth of the narrator.

pax factus, constituo colloco duo cohorts in Nantuates, et hiemo ipse in vicus Veragri, qui appello Octodurus; et quam hic in duo pars flumen divido, alter pars hic vicus divido Gallus, alter cohorts hiemandum attribuo.

Nunc isdem, labens dies, convivium quaro; Iliacusque iterum demens audio labor exposco, pendo que iterum narrans ab os.

C H A P. XL.

The Supine in *um*, has an active Signification, and is governed by Verbs and Participles signifying *Motion to a Place*.

The Supine in *u*, has a Passive Signification, and is governed by Adjectives.

THIS man came to Cæsar to intreat, that he would pardon him.

Mæcenas went to diversion, and Virgil went to bed.

A true friend is a thing hard to be found.

Let nothing filthy to be spoken, or to be seen, touch those doors, within which there is a child,

HIC homo venio ad Cæsar oro, ut ignosco sui.

Mæcenas eo ludo, Virgiliusque eo dormio.

Verus amicus sum res difficilis invenio.

Nil fædus dico, video-ve, tango hic limen, intra qui puer sum.

Ovid

Ovidus

Ovid tells us, that the young Roman gentlewomen went to the theatre to see young men, to shew their fine clothes, and to get themselves sweethearts.

The man that goes a hawking, hunting, or visiting his friends, when his necessary occasions call for his presence elsewhere, prefers his recreation before his business, and the society of his friends before his own profit.

That man is hard to be found, that preferreth his friend's advantage before his own.

Those parents, who are too indulgent to their children, are worthy to be blamed; but those that keep them under a moderate restraint, are worthy to be commended.

Alexander being mindful that Darius was yet alive, sent Parmenio to seize upon the Persian fleet, and other friends to receive the cities of Asia.

Then he recovered Rhodes, Egypt and Cicilia, without any contest; then he goes to Jupiter Hammon, to consult him concerning the event of the war and his own original.

When the enemies saw Alexander alone, they flock together from all quarters; nor did he less courageously resist, and alone fight against so many thousands. It is incredible to be said, that not the multitude of the enemies, nor the vast number of weapons,

nor

Ovidus dico ego, mulier junior Romanus eo ad theatrum video adolescens, ostendo vestis suus elegans, et paro sui procus.

Qui, eo aucupor, venor, vel viso amicus suus, cum negotium necessarius postulo presentia is alibi, antefero recreatio negotium suus, et societas amicus commodum suus.

Ille sum difficilis invenio, qui præpono commodum amicus suus.

Parens is, qui nimis indulgeo liberi suus, sum dignus culpo; sed qui coerceo is disciplina moderatus, sum dignus laudo.

Alexander memor Darius adhuc vivo, mitto Parmenio occupo classis Persicus, aliusque amicus recipio civitas Asia.

Inde recipio Rhodus, Egyptus, et Cicilia, sine certamen; deinde pergo ad Jupiter Hammon, consulto is de eventus bellum et origo suus.

Cum hostis conspicio Alexander solus, undique concurreo; nec minus constanter resisto, et unus prælior adversus tot mille. Sum incredibilis dico, ut non multitudo hostis, non vis magnus telum, non tantus clamor laceffens, terreo

nor so great a shout of those, that attacked him, should fright him, that he alone should slaughter and put to flight so many thousands.

Part of the army was sent to lay waste the Roman territories, and to attempt the city itself. L. Valerius was left to defend the city, and the consul Posthumius was sent to drive away the enemy out of the country.

When it was told the Romans, that Philip would bring over his army into Italy, they sent Lævinus, the Prætor, to hinder his passage; who, when he had passed over into Greece, persuades the Ætoli to undertake a war against Philip.

When Darius was beaten from Scythia, he sent Megabyzus with a part of the army to subdue Thrace, and the other kingdoms on that side; who executed the king's orders and sent ambassadors to Amyntas, king of Macedonia, to demand hostages of him.

The Senate sends Cnæus Servilius into Africa, to observe the actions of Annibal, and enjoins him by private instructions, to kill Annibal, if he could, and deliver the Roman people from the dread of that hated name. But Annibal was not long ignorant of the matter, being a man ready to foresee and beware of danger.

terreo is, ut salus vado ac fugoset mille.

Pars exercitus mitto depopuloz ager Romanus at sento urbs ipse. L. Valerius exlinguo tutor urbs, et consul Posthumius mitto arce hostis exurger.

Cum nuncio Romanus Philippus trajicio copia in Italia, mitto Lævinus, Prætor, prohibeo transitus; qui, cum trajicio in Grecia, persuadso Ætoli suscipio bellum adversus Philippus.

Cum Darius summo deo a Scythia, mitto Megabyzus cum pars copia subigo Thracia, cæteræ regnum is tractus; qui exiquor rex imperium, et mitto legatus Amyntas, rex Macedonia, posco objes is.

Senatus mitto Cnæus Servilius in Africa, speculator actus Annibal, et præcipio is tacitus mandatum interficio Annibal, si possum, et libero Romanus Populus metus invisus nomen. Sed Annibal non sum ignarus res, vir paratus prospicio et caveo periculum.

The

Eurus

The east wind forces three ships from the high sea upon shoals and quicksands, miserable to be seen, and dashes them against the fords, and surrounds them with a heap of sand.

Pale diseases dwell there, and sad old age, and fear, and evil advising hunger, and infamous poverty, spectres horrid to be seen.

Moreover, shocking to be seen, they stick the heads of Eurialus and Nisus on erected spears, and follow with much vociferation.

On the other part, horrid to be seen, Mezentius brandished the Etruscan pine, and throws among them smoking torches.

Then from a hollow cloud, strange monster to behold, the Goddess, in the shape of Æneas, furnishes with Trojan armour an airy phantom, without strength, and imitates the shield and crested helmet of his divine head.

*Eurus urgeo tres navis
ab altum in breviam et syr-
tis, miserabilis video, illi-
doque vadum, atque cingo
agger arena.*

*Pallens morbus habito,
tristisque senectus, et me-
tus, et male suadus fames,
et turpis egestas, terribi-
lis video forma.*

*Quin, miserabilis vi-
deo, præfigo ipse caput
Eurialus et Nisus in
hasta arrectus, et sequor
multus clamor.*

*Pars alius, horrendus
video, Mezentius quasso
pinus Etruscus, et infero
fumiferus ignis.*

*Tum nubes cavus,
miserabilis monstrum vi-
deo, Dea, in facies Æne-
as, instauro Dardanus
telum tenuis umbra sine
vires, clypeumque jubæque
divinus caput affimulo.*

C H A P. XLI.

Nouns, that signify the time *When*, are generally put in the Ablative.

Nouns, that signify the continuance of *Time*, are commonly put in the Accusative.

THEY, that always design to be good, next week, and to amend their lives, next year, and do not set about it to day, seem to mock God, to please the devil, and cheat their own souls.

Let us not say, next year, next month, next week, next hour, next moment, but embrace the offer of eternal life, this present instant.

When will you increase your diligence? The first day we come from school.

A boy, that loiters a whole week, becometh idle afterwards and will not study. But he is a wise boy, that intermingles study with play, even upon holiday: Then play becomes pleasant to him, at his intervals, and his mind is so prepared for learning, that when he comes to school again, he can learn all day without weariness.

None is sure to live another year, yet none is content to die this year.

Annibal

QUI semper statuo sum bonus, septimana proximus, et corrigo vita meus annus proximus, neque aggredior hodie, video illud Deo, placeo diabolo, et fallo anima meus.

Ne dico, annus proximus, mensis proximus, septimana proximus, hora proximus, vel momentum proximus, sed amplector conditio felicitas eternus, articulus hic ipse tempus.

Quando augeo diligentia tuus? Primus dies, qui revertor a schola.

Puer, qui cesso septimana totus, si ignavus postea, et non studeo. Sed ille sum puer sapiens, qui interpono studium ludus, id que dies festus: Tunc ludus si jucundus ille intervallum suus, et mensis sum ita paror ad disco, ut cum revertor ad schola, possum studeo dies totus absque tedium.

Nemo sum certus vivo alius annus, nemo tamen sum contentus morior hic annus. Annibal

Annibal returned to Africa, the third year, after he had fled from home.

Tiberius died in the seventieth and eighth year of his age, and twenty third of his reign.

Bocchus, at the begining of the war, had sent ambassadors to Rome to desire a league and alliance.

Aulus called out his soldiers in the month of January from winter quarters, upon an expedition.

The usurer calls in all his money on the Ides, and seeks to lay it out on the kalends.

In the same year there was an earthquake betwixt the islands of Thera and Therasia, and on a sudden an island rose out of the deep.

In Asia too, the same day, the same earthquake shattered Rhodes, and many other cities.

Homer and Hesiod lived about a hundred and fifty years, before the building of Rome.

Mithridates reigned sixty years, lived seventy two, and had a war with the Romans forty years.

Caligula lived twenty nine years; he reigned three years, ten months, and eight days.

Agamemnon with much ado took one city in ten years.
Epaminondas

Annibal ad Africa redeo, tertius annus, postquam profugio e domus.

Tiberius obo septuagesimus et octavus annus ætas, et vigesimus tertius imperium.

Bocchus, initium bellum, mitto legatus ad Roma peto fœdus et amicitia.

Aulus evoco miles mensis Januarius, ex hyberna, in expeditio.

Fœnerator relego omnis pecunia Idus, et quæro kalendæ pono.

Idem annus sum terra motus inter insula Thera et Therasia, et repente insula emergo ex profundum.

In Asia quoque, idem dies, idem motus terra concutio Rhodus, multaque alius civitas.

Homerus et Hesiodus vivo circiter centum et quinquaginta annus ante Roma conditus.

Mithridates regno sexaginta annus; vivo septuaginta duo, et habeo bellum contra Romanus quadraginta annus.

Caligula vivo annus viginti novem; impera triennium, decem mensis, dies et octo.

*Agamemnon vix capio unus urbs decem annus.
Epaminondas.*

Epaminondas in one day delivered all Greece.

The labours of many months and years may perish in a moment of time.

At the same time, the Consentini revolted from the Carthaginians.

Scipio was Curule Ædile, that year, with M. Cornelius Cethegus.

Posthumius was a publican, who, for several years, had none in the city equal to him, in knavery and covetousness.

That roguery was discovered to M. Attilius, the Prætor, the year before.

Some presages of the future greatness of Alexander appeared at his birth. For the day on which he was born, two eagles sat all day, upon the top of his father's house, by which was signified, that he should enjoy the empire of Asia and Europe. The same day also his father received the news of two victories.

Nabis the tyrant, at the same time, had seized many cities of Greece. Therefore the Senate, lest they should be engaged in a double war, at the same time, wrote to Flaminius, if it seemed good to him, as he had freed Macedonia from Philip, so he would deliver Greece from Nabis, for which reason his command was continued to him.

The Gauls, passing the Alps, subdued the Pannonians, and waged

Epaminondas, unus dies, libero totus Græcia.

Labor multus mensis et annus intereo possunt punctum tempus.

Idem tempus, Consentini deficio a Panus.

Scipio sum Curulis Ædilis, is annus, cum M. Cornelius Cethegus.

Posthumius sum publicanus, qui, multus annus, habeo nemo in civitas par sui fraus et avaritia.

Is fraus indico M. Attilius, Prætor, annus prior.

Nonnullus prodigium futurus magnitudo Alexander appereo in ipse ortus. Nam, is dies, qui nascor, duo aquila sedeo, totus dies, supra pater domus; qui significo ille potior imperium Asia Europaque. Idem dies, quoque pater is accipio nuncium duo victoria.

Nabis tyrannus, idem tempus, occupo multus urbs Græcia. Igitur Senatus, ne detineo duplex bellum, idem tempus, scribo Flaminius, si videor is, ut libero Macedonia a Philippus, ita libero Græcia a Nabis, ob qui causa imperium prorogo is.

Gallus, transgressus Alpes, domo Pannonius,

waged war, several years with the neighbouring nations ; some invaded Macedonia ; and others, Greece ; and so great was the terror of the Gallic name, that kings not molested, bought peace of their own accord, at a great rate.

The next day and night after, the camp was besieged and attacked, with so great violence, that a messenger could not be sent to Rome.

Whilst the works go on more diligently in the day, than they are guarded in the night a great multitude coming out of the town, armed chiefly with torches, threw fire about, and in the moment of an hour, the fire consumed the mole and the Vineæ, a work of so long a time.

About the fourth watch, he marched out of the camp, and the work was carried on so fast, that the Volsci found themselves surrounded by a strong entrenchment, at sunrise.

In that battle Astyages is taken, from whom Cyrus took nothing else but his kingdom, and acted the grandson towards him, rather than the conqueror, and set him over the great nation of the Hyrcanians. This was the end of the empire of the Medes : They enjoyed the empire three hundred and fifty years.

P. 2.

The

et gero bellum multus annus cum finitimus gens : alius invado Macedonia ; alius, Græcia ; et tantus sum terror Gallicus nomen, ut rex non laceffitus, mercor ultro pax ingens pecunia.

Proximus dies et non posterus, castra circumfideo et obfideo tantus vis, ut nuncius non possum mitto ad Roma.

Dum opus fio diligentius dies quam custodio nox, magnus multitudo egressus ex urbs, armatus præcipue fax, conjicio ignis ; et momentum hora, incendium haurio agger et Vineæ, opus tam longus tempus.

Quartus vigilia egredior e castra, et opus adeo appropero, ut Volsci video sui circumvallatus firmus munimentum sol ortus.

In is prælium Astyages capio, qui Cyrus adimo nihil aliud quam regnum, et ago nepos in is, magis quam victor, et præpono is magnus gens Hyrcani. Hic finis sum imperium Medi : Potior imperium trecenti et quinquaginta annus.

Phœnices.

The Phœnicans built Carthage, in Africa, fifty years before the taking of Troy.

Phœnices condo Carthaginem, in Africa, quinquaginta annis ante captus Ilium.

C H A P. XLII.

Nouns that signify the Names of *Kingdoms*, *Cities* and *Towns*, if they are of the *first* or *second* Declension, and Singular Number, are put in the Genitive.

Proper names of *Places*, that are of the Plural Number *only* or of the Third Declension, are put in the Ablative.

Proper Names of *Places*, after Verbs of *Motion*, are put in the Accusative.

The Proper Name of a *Place* from which a Person goes, is put in the Ablative.

The *Distance* of one *Place* from another is put in the Accusative, or Ablative.

OLD age was no where more honoured, than at Lacedæmon; and servants were no where better treated, than at Athens.

Pyrrhus was slain at Delphi; and Philip was slain at Agæ, as he was going to see the publick games.

After they had done this, they returned from Chalcis to Athens.

If you will go into the country, you will find your friend at home.

SENECTUS nusquam honoratus, quam Lacedæmon; et seruus nusquam bene habeo quam Athenæ.

Pyrrhus occido Delphi; et Philippus interficio Agæ, cum eo spectatum ludus publicus.

Postquam hic facio, redeo Chalcis Athenæ.

Si eo rus, invenio amicus tuus domus.

He

Duce

He led his army to Megara, and immediately after to Corinth.

When Alexander was come to Tarsus, being taken with the pleasantness of the river Cydnus, running through the middle of the city, he put off his armour, and full of dust and sweat threw himself into the cold water, upon which a great numbness seized his nerves.

When boys are sent from home to the school, they ought not to loiter, or play by the way; the same is to be observed when they are sent from the school home.

I was born in the country, and never have my health better, than when I go into the country.

The Roman Emperor, Julius Cæsar, after he had conquered the ancient Britons, built a tower at London, the chief city of England; but did not stay at London, but appointed lieutenants in his stead, and returned from London into Italy.

Careless and wicked boys come from church and from school, more readily than they go to them.

Whilst these things are doing, ambassadors came from Darius, king of the Parthians, to Carthage, bringing an edict, by which the Carthaginians were forbidden to offer

Duco exercitus Megara, ac protinus Corinthus.

Cum Alexander venisset Tarsus, captus amantissimus fluvius Cydnus, influens medius urbs, depono arma, et plenus pulvis et sudor, conjicio sui in præfrigidus aqua; post qui magnus rigor occupo nervus.

Puer cum mitto domum ad schola, non cesso sum, neque ludo per via; idem sum obseruo, cum mitto a schola domum.

Ego nascor rus, et nunquam felix valetudo fruor, quam cum recipio ego rus.

Imperator Romanus, Julius Cæsar, postquam supero Britannus antiquus, adifico turris Londinum, metropolis Angliæ; sed non maneo Londinum, sed constituo prorex locus suus, et redeo Londinum in Italia.

Puer in sedulis et impius discendo a templum et a schola, promptus quam adeo ille.

Dum hæc ago, legatus venio a Darius, rex Persæ, Carthago, ferens edictum, qui Pani veto im-
mole

offer human sacrifices, and to eat dogs' flesh.

Cæsar divided his army into five parts, and left one at Brundisium, another at Hydruntum, and another at Tarentum. Q. Valerius, being sent with another, seized Sardinia, very fruitful in corn. By his order, Afnius Pollio went for Sicily, which Cato governed.

Because there appeared no danger in Syria, the two legions wintered at Capua.

Whilst these things are done, it is told at Lacedæmon, that a new war was broken out at Athens. King Pausanias is sent thither, who, being moved with pity of the exiled people, restored their country to the miserable citizens, and ordered the ten tyrants to remove to Eleusia.

Pyrrhus waged war, at that time, against the Romans; who, being invited by the Syracusians to their aid, when he was come to Syracuse, and had subdued several cities, was called king of Sicily, as well as Epirus.

After Antiochus was dead, his son Seleucus succeeded in the kingdom, who received his brother Antiochus, who had been a pledge at Rome, and gave his son Demetrius in his stead. Antiochus was now come to Athens, when Seleucus was taken off by a plot of Heliodorus.

Of

molo humanus victima, et vescor caro caninus.

Cæsar divido copiam in quinque pars, et relinquo unus Brundisium, alius Hydruntum, alius Tarentum. Q. Valerius, missus alius, occupo Sardinia, ferax frumentum. Is jussus Afnius Pollio peto Sicilia, qui Cato præsum.

Quia nullus periculum apparet in Syria, duo legio hyemo Capua.

Dum hic ago, nuncio Lacedæmon, novus bellum exardeo Athenæ. Rex Pausanias eo mitto, qui, permotus misericordia exul populus, restituo patriam miser. civis, et jubeo decem tyrannus migro Eleusis.

Pyrrhus gero bellum, id tempus, adversus Romanus; qui, imploratus Syracusanus in auxilium, cum venio Syracusæ, et subigo multas civitas, appello rex Sicilia, sicuti Epirus.

Postquam Antiochus fungor fatum, filius Seleucus succedo in regnum, qui recipio frater Antiochus, qui sum obses Roma; et do filius suus Demetrius vices is. Antiochus pervenio jam Athenæ, cum Seleucus opprimo infidiam Heliodorus.

Ex

Of thirty thousand men, whom Attalus commanded, a few escaped at Clypea; all the rest were either slain, or taken, in which number was the Proconsul himself, whom not long after the Carthaginians sent to Rome, with their ambassadors, that he should either obtain a peace for them, or return.

After the Scythians had been absent eight years from their wives and children, in the third Asiatic expedition, they are received at home, by a war of the slaves.

The Persian gulf is distant a hundred and fifteen miles from the red sea.

He pitched his camp six miles from the enemy, and he was at that time three days' journey from Tarentum.

The first field of the civil war was Italy; the first signal sounded from Ariminum; then Libo was forced from Etruria; Thermus, from Umbria; Domitius, from Corfinium. And the war had been ended without bloodshed, if he could have mastered Pompey at Brundisium.

Darius, that he might reduce Greece under his authority, fitted out a fleet of five hundred ships, and set Datis and Artaphernes over it; who came to Attica, and drew out their troops into the plain of Marathon, that is distant about ten miles from the city Athens.

Ex triginta mille viri, qui Attalus præsum, paucus evado Clypea; reliquus omnis aut cado, aut capio, in qui numerus sum ipse Proconsul, qui non multo post Pæni mitta Roma legatus suus, ut aut impetro illo pax, aut revertor.

Cum Scythia absum octo annus ab uxor et liberi, in tertius Asiaticus expeditio, recipio domus bel-lum servilis.

Sinus Persicus disto centum et quindecim mille passus a mare ruber.

Pono castra sex mille passus ab hostis, et tum absum via triduum à Tarentum.

Primus arena civilis bellum Italia sum; primus signum Ariminum cano; tum Libo pello Etruria; Thermus, Umbria; Domitius, Corfinium. Et bellum perago sine sanguis, si possum opprimo Pompeius Brundisium.

Darius, ut redigo Grecia in suas potestas, comparo classis quingenti navis, præficio que is Datis et Artaphernes; qui accedo ad Attica, ac deduco suus copia in campus Marathon, is absum ab oppidum Athenæ, circiter de-
oem

Athens. The Athenians, being very much startled at this alarm fought for assistance no where but from the Lacedæmonians: But at home ten officers were chosen to command the army,

cem mille passus. Atheniensis, permotus hic tumultus, peto auxilium nusquam nisi a Lacedæmonii: Domus autem decem prætor creo, qui præsum exercitus.

C H A P. XLIII.

Adverbs govern the same Cases as the words from which they are derived govern.

Adverbs of *Time, Place* and *Quantity*, with *instar* and *ergo*, govern the Genitive.

Adverbs of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees govern the same Case, that their Adjectives govern.

En, ecce and *hem*, govern an Accusative of the *Thing*, and Dative of the *Person*.

Cedo, used Adverbially, governs the Accusative.

These Adverbs, *aliter, ante, post* and *secus*, govern the Ablative of the Noun, that signifies the *Quantity*.

BEHOOLD the admirable love of God towards miserable sinners.

But, behold the adamantine hardness of sinners' hearts.

Lo the great folly of youth, that love play before learning, and account him the best master, that giveth the ofttest leave to play.

ECCE amor mirus Deus erga peccator miser!

Sed, en durities adamantinus peccator cor!

En stultitia egregius juvenis, qui diligo lusus præ literæ bonus, existimoque is magister bonus, qui sæpe concedo venia ludo.

Whilft

Dum

Whilst I, wandering about, am deprived of my country, you, in the mean time, have made yourself rich.

After this, the consul, now unquestionably conqueror, came to the town of Cirta.

The nations of the world are, at this time, come to that pass of wickedness, that the earth is like hell, and many men have degenerated into devils; impiety and idolatry have overspread the greatest part of the world; though there is enough of profession, yet there is but a little of true religion.

The strength of the Athenians, at that time, was small, their fleet being sent into Egypt.

What you are doing, or where in the world you were, I could not so much as guess.

He came to that height of madness, that what I should do, or to what part of the world I should fly, I knew not.

Where in the world are we? Are we come to this pass? Are we come to this pitch of misery?

I can find my brother nowhere: But in whatever part of the world he may be, he will be loved by good men.

I have seen an English mastiff as big as an Irish wolf, and almost as fierce in his nature.

They

Dum ego, errans, patria careo, tu, interea locus, tu locupleto.

Postea locus, consul, haud dubie jam victor, pervenio in oppidum Cirta.

Ubique gens nunc pervenio eò impietas, ut terra sum instar infernum, et multus degenero in diabulus; impietas et idolatria permanso magnus pars terra; quanquam sum satis professo, at tamen parum sum religio.

Vires Atheniensis, tunc tempus, sum parvus, classis in Egyptus missus.

Quis ago, aut ubi terræ sum, ne suspicor quidem.

Is recordia precedo, ut quis ago, aut quo gens fugio, nescio.

Ubinam gens sum? Hucine res venio? Eone miseria venitur?

Frater nusquam gens invenio: Sed ubique terra sum diligo a bonus vir.

Video molossus Anglicus instar lupus Hibernicus, et paulò minùs ferox natura.

Non

They do not encompass little towns with high walls, after the manner of populous cities.

They, that cannot conceal their friends' secrets, from those that ask them, but disclose what is committed to their trust, act not only unfaithfully to their friends, but hurtful to themselves.

The air is nigher to the earth than the fire; but the water is placed nighest to the earth; because these two elements compose one body.

Let me see this book; reach me also thy pen, that I may write the instructions, that I have given thee; otherwise thou wilt forget them, for thou seldom rememberest good admonitions.

That man is a notorious liar, who denies the same thing this hour, which he instantly affirmed a little before; no credit is to be given to his words.

Let him go to any part of the world, the affair will be in the same condition: Virtue every where will find friends.

Cæsar said, that he had got abundance of power, and glory, and plenty of wealth.

Let him have plenty of old wine, that he may drink, day and night.

Too much artifice seems to have been used for charming the ears; he, that behaves right, will have plenty of applauders.

*Non cingo oppidulum
mania altus, ad instar
urbis frequentissimus.*

*Qui non possum celo
arcanum amicus, ille qui
rogo, sed effutio qui com-
mitto fides suus, non so-
lum ago infideliter amicus,
sed incommode fui.*

*Aër existo propè terra,
quam ignis; sed aqua
colloco propè terra; quo-
niam hic duo elementum
compono corpus unus.*

*Cedo liber ille; cedo
etiam penna tuus, ut scri-
bo monitus iste qui da tu;
utroquin obliviscor is, nam
raro reminiscor admo-
nitio bonus.*

*Ille sum mendax egre-
gius, qui nego idem hic
hora, qui instanter affirmo
paulus antè; fides nullus
sum adhibeo verbum is.*

*Adeo quovis gens res
ibidem locus sum: Virtus
ubique locus invenio ami-
cus.*

*Cæsar dico sui adipif-
cor potentia gloriaque
abunde, et divitiæ affatim.*

*Habeo vetus vinum
largiter, ut dies noxque
poto.*

*Nimis insidiæ ad capi-
endus auris adhibeo vide-
or; qui recte facio habeo
satis laudator.*

Fione

Will

Will he become an excellent poet, who has no courage to dash the words, that have little beauty? By no means.

I do not ask what he says, but what he can say agreeably to reason.

The Sulmonenses opened the gates, and all went out to meet Antony.

The ground being covered with dung a foot thick, must be formed into beds before you begin to sow.

The Numidians possess the other parts as far as Mauritania, the Mauri are next to Spain.

Thus speaks Neptune, and swifter than speech he smooths the swelling seas, disperses the collected clouds, and brings back the day.

Astyages, being frightened at this answer, gave his daughter in marriage neither to a famous man, nor to a citizen, but to Cambyses, a mean man of the nation of the Persians, at that time obscure.

Cyrus, the day following, forsook his camp; but left plenty of wine, and those things that were necessary for a feast.

He, in the presence of Diomedes, said, there is no need of money; for if the king desire those things, that are expedient for the Thebans, I am ready to do them for nothing, but

Fio ne ille egregius poeta, qui non audeo expugnano verbum qui parum splendor habeo? Minime gens.

Non quæro quis dico, sed quis possum dico convenienter ratio.

Sulmonenses porta aperio, et omnis obviam Antonius exeo.

Terra, stercoretus pes alte, in pulvinus redigendus sum, antequam sero incipio.

Numidæ teneo cæter locus usque ad Mauritania, proxime Hispania Mauri sum.

Sic ait Neptunus, et dicunt citius placo tumidæ æquor, fugo collectus nubes, solque reduco.

Astyages, exterritus hic responsum trado filia in matrimonium, neque clærus vir, neque civis, sed Cambyses, mediocris vir; ex gens Persæ, tunc icctopus obscurus.

Cyrus; diès posterus, defero castra; et relinquo affatim vinam, et is, qui necessarius epatum sum.

Ille Diomedes coram, inquam, nihil opus sum pecunia; nam si rex is volo qui Thebani sum utilis, gratis facio sum paratus et hæc autem con-

but if the contrary, he has not gold and silver enough. He ordered, that the greatest respect should belong, not to the rich and powerful, but to old men, according to the degree of their age; nor indeed has old age, any where on earth, a more respectful habitation, than at Lacedemon.

C H A P. XLIV.

Ah and *vah* govern the Accusative and Vocative.

Heus and *ohe* govern the Vocative.

Hei and *væ* govern the Dative.

Heu, *O*, and *pro* govern the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative.

OH! the wickedness of these bloody men.

Ah! the horrid murders, that some have committed.

Alas! my folly. Alas! my ignorance. O! the dismal effects, that unbelief has produced.

O! the faith of gods and men.

Ah! the piety. Ah! the faith of ancient time.

Ah! me. Wo! is me, love is curable by no herbs.

O! the times. O! the manners.

O! people worthy of the empire of the world; worthy of the favour of gods and men.

Oh! impietas sanguinis lentus hic.

Ah! homicidium dirus, qui nonnullus committo.

Heu! stultitia meus.

Heu! ignorantia meus.

Pro! effectus dirus, qui incredulitas paro.

Pro! Deus homaque fides.

Heu! pietas. Heu! fides priscus.

Hei! ego. Væ! ego, nullus amor sum medicabilis herba.

O! tempus. O! mos.

O! populus dignus orbis imperium; dignus sanctorum deus atque homo.

APPENDIX.



Containing **CRITICAL, EXPLANATORY NOTES** and **OBSERVATIONS**, under every **CHAPTER** of the foregoing **INTRODUCTION**. Let it be remembered, that the respective **CHAPTERS**, in the **APPENDIX**, are to be used to explain the **CHAPTERS**, in the **INTRODUCTION**, of the same Numerical Figure.

CHAP. I.

1. *EGO* and *nos* are the first person; *tu* and *vos*, the second person; all other pronouns are of the third person, excepting *ille*, *ipse* and *qui*, which are occasionally used for any person. All nouns of every kind, are of the third person.

2. The word, that answers the question, *who?* *which?* and *what?* before the verb is the nominative case, with which the verb must agree, in number and person.

3. On the principle of enallage *only*, an adverb is used as the nominative to a verb. By enallage one part of speech is put for another: As, *fatis vini bibitur*, enough wine is drunk. Here *fatis* is put for *abundantia*; and, hence, has all the power of a noun.

4. *When*

4. When a noun of multitude singular contains *singularity*, or *unity*, of idea, it must ever have a verb, in the singular number. But when it has plurality of idea, it must have a plural verb.

CHAPTER II.

1. When the noun is not expressed, in Latin, the adjective must take such case and gender, as the suppressed noun is supposed to have, and with which it really agrees: Thus, *per immortales*, that is, *deos*; *laborare retiana*, that is, *febri*.

2. Adjectives are frequently used as having the nature of nouns; and they may then have other adjectives to agree with them in number, case and gender.

3. An adjective, connected with two nouns of different genders, is generally made to agree with the most important one: As, *oppidum Pastum, Græcis Possidonia appellatum*. The adjective, or Participle, does sometimes, however, agree with the nearest and less important noun: As *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*: Cic. But if the principal noun be the proper name of a man, or woman, the adjective or participle must ever agree with it: As, *bonus Imperator amphora dictus est, not dicta*. *Semiramis puer esse credita est, not creditus*.

CHAPTER III.

1. The verbs, in the following sentences have been called neuter; and as such, they are said to govern a noun, in the accusative of a cognate signification: *Vivere vitam, degere vitam; gaudere gaudium; servire servitutum; ire viam longam; garrere nugas; pugnare prælia; prædare luscinas, cænare aprum*. But in these, and similar phrases, the verbs are active and as such govern the accusative.

2. A noun, in the accusative, after a verb neuter, or intransitive, is not properly governed by the verb, but by a preposition understood. This is called *figurative syntax*, and the figure is called *synecdoche*; by which either *ad, in, ob, circa, per, or circum* are suppressed.

3. These

3. These accusative neuters, after verbs, are often governed by *propter*, *ob*, or *circa*, suppressed. *Hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, multa, pauca, alia, cætera, omnia, quantum.* As, *num id lachrymat virgo? Scio quid erres. Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi.*

4. According to the poetical stile, an adjective is frequently put in the accusative, neuter gender, after verbs and participles, and they may elegantly be construed as having the nature of adverbs. As, *torvumque repente clamat, for torve.* *Virg. Mens lætatur turbidum, for turbide.* *Hor. Transversa tuentibus hircis, for transverse: Virg.*

CHAPTER IV.

1. The scholar should impress on his mind the verbs, that come under these rules. They are these: *Sum, fio, existo, forem, appellor, dicor, nuncupor, vocor, nominor, agnoscor, salutor, existimor, putor, invenior, scribor, videor, nascor, designor, creor, constituor, putor, cognoscor, habeor, censo, reperior, cubo, incedo, sto, eo, redeo, maneo, venio, sedeo, jaceo, evado, fugio, dormio, somnio, and the like.*

2. The word after these verbs, is often an adjective, and must be put in the same gender, case and number with the preceding noun; for it does really agree with it. Sometimes the noun is suppressed.

3. Any verb may have a nominative case after it, when the word belongs to the same thing with the nominative before it. As, *audivi hoc puer: Cic. Sapiens nihil facit invitus: Cic.*

4. When a verb, that governs the dative, such as *licet*, &c. comes before the abovementioned verbs in the infinitive, the case after the verb is commonly the dative; but the accusative is sometimes used. As, *expedit vobis esse bonas: Ter. Liceat esse miseros: Cic.*

5. The case after transitive verbs, followed by the infinitive *esse*, is, in prose authors, ever the accusative; but the poets, omitting the pronouns *me, te, se, vos, nos*, use the nominative, in imitation of the Greeks. As, *quia retulit Ajax esse Jovis pronepos: Ovid. Uxor invidi Jovis esse nescit. Patiens vocari Cæsar is ultor: Hor.*

Hor. Sensit medios delapsus in hostes : instead of, sensit se esse delapsum : *VIRG.*

6. This remark respects not the *genitive* and *ablative* : but the *nominative*, *dative* and *accusative only*. For to say, *interest Ciceronis esse eloquentis*, is bad *Latin*. It ought to be *interest Ciceronis esse eloquentem*,

CHAPTER V.

As the proper construction of the relative is attended with considerable difficulty, it may be suitable to be somewhat prolix in our remarks.

1. If a member of a sentence be the antecedent to a relative ; the relative must ever be in *the third person singular and neuter gender*.

2. If two or more members of a compound sentence be the antecedent to a relative, the relative must ever be in *the third person plural and neuter gender*.

3. A pronoun primitive, not expressed, but understood, or a possessive pronoun placed before a relative, is sometimes the antecedent to the relative ; and, if occasion require, may have an adjective to agree with it, as if it were expressed.

4. Two or three antecedents singular must have a relative plural, and the relative must be of the same gender and person with that noun, which is the most worthy. And let it be carefully noted, that the first person is more worthy than the second ; the second, more worthy than the third : Also that the masculine gender is more worthy than the feminine ; and the feminine more worthy than the neuter ; but if all the antecedent nouns are expressive of things destitute of life, whose genders, in *Latin*, are different, then the neuter gender is esteemed most worthy.

5. Interrogatives and indefinites follow the rules of the relative. If a nominative come between them and the verb, then they are governed by the verb or some word in the sentence ; but if no nominative intervene between them and the verb, then they are the nominative.

6. The antecedent may easily be found by asking the question, *who ? which ? what ?*

7. IF

7. If *whose* be the English of the relative, then the Latin relative must be put in the genitive, either singular or plural, as occasion may require.

8. The antecedent is generally, some substantive noun, either expressed or understood, which goes before the relative, and is sometimes repeated with the relative and ever understood with it, as the word with which it does properly agree. As, *cave voluptatem, quæ est pestis*; that is *quæ voluptas est pestis*. And again, *erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*.
CÆS.

9. The antecedent is sometimes suppressed, in its proper place, and expressed with the relative. As, *populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas*; for *fabulæ quas fabulas*: TER. *Sub qua nunc recubas arbore, virga fuit*, for *arbor, sub qua arbore*: OVID. *Urbem quam statuo, vestra est*: for *urbs, quam urbem*: VIRG.

10. The person of the relative is ever the same with that of the antecedent; as, *ego, qui doceo*; *tu, qui discis*; *lectio, quæ docetur*; *saxum, quod frangitur*. The reason is this: The antecedent, which is supposed to be repeated along with the relative, is properly the true nominative to the verb. As, *ego, qui ego doceo*, &c.

11. When the relative is placed between two nouns of different genders, it does sometimes, though rarely, agree with the last. As, *animal quem vocamus hominem*: CIC.

12. The relative sometimes, instead of taking the gender of its antecedent, takes the gender of some synonymous word understood. As, *earum rerum, quæ prima mortales dicunt*: SALL. *Negotia* is the synonymous word.

C H A P. VI.

1. A singular nominative, if followed by another noun in the ablative, governed by *cum*, may have a verb, adjective, or participle, in the plural, to agree with it, as, *Quirinus, cum fratre, jura dabunt*: VIRG. *Juba, cum Labièno, capti in potestatem Cæsaris venerunt*. *Cadmus, cum uxore, in dracones sunt conversi*. Sentences of this description, convey plurality of idea; and

and, hence, plural verbs, adjectives and participles are elegantly connected with a singular nominative.

2. The conjunction between the nominatives, is often suppressed. As, *dum atas, metus, magister prohibebant*. A suppression of conjunctions is elegantly used; especially in sentences, that convey a rapid succession of ideas. As, *veni, vidi, vici* : CÆSAR.

3. The verb, or adjective, neglecting the general rule, does frequently agree with the nearest nominative. As, *et ego et Cicero meus flagitabat*. *Mare rubrum et totus orientis oceanus refertus est sylvis* : PLIN. *Sociis et rege recepto* : VIRG. *Omnia tuta vides, classem sociosque receptas* : VIRG.

CHAPTER VII.

1. When a verb, in the infinitive, or a member of a sentence, is the nominative case to another verb, the *latter verb* must ever be in the third person singular. But,

2. If two, or more infinitives, or members of sentences are used, the *latter* must be in the third person plural.

3. As verbs, in the infinitive mode are considered as having the nature of substantive nouns, so there is no impropriety in using them as agents, or nominatives, to other verbs.

4. As verbs in the infinitive and members of sentences are ever expressive of things, and are used as having the nature of antecedents, so the adjectives, participles, and relatives, that follow them, must be put in the neuter gender, either singular or plural as occasion may require.

CHAPTER VIII. and IX.

The rules in these chapters are so plain, that they need no remarks.

CHAR.

CHAPTER X,

1. When two verbs, in *English* come together, and nothing but a *nominative case* comes between them, the intervening *nominative* may be put in *Latin* into the *accusative*, and the verb, which in *English*, is in the *indicative*, may be put into the *infinitive*, in *Latin*.

2. The plainest method to find this *accusative*, is to ask the question *who? which? what?* after a declarative sentence. As, a man, who affirmed, that he was wounded. The noun, or pronoun, that answers the question, must be put into the *accusative case*; and the verb, into the *infinitive*. In the preceding sentence, the question is, *what was affirmed?* The answer is, *that he was wounded*. Hence, in *Latin*, the pronoun must be in the *accusative*, and the verb, in the *infinitive*: *se vulnerari*, that he was wounded.

3. This *accusative* is said to govern the *infinitive mode*; and it is also said to be absolute; because there is no word, that governs it in the *accusative*.

4. When *quod*, or *ut*, precede sentences of this construction, the *noun*, or *pronoun*, must be in the *nominative case*; and the verb, in the *conjunctive mode*. As, the nymph complained, that her arms were become long boughs: *Nympha dolebat, quod sua brachia facta fuerint longi rami*.

5. The *accusative pronouns*, *me, te, se, illum*, and the *infinitives esse* and *fuisse* are often understood: As, but he denied, that he was able to return; *sed reddere posse negabat*. *VIRG.* Here, *se* is understood: I knew, that the army was slain: *exercitum cæsum cognovi*; *CIC.* Here *fuisse* is understood.

6. The governing word is sometimes understood. As, *me incepto desistere?* *VIRG.* Here, *deceat* is understood. In these phrases, *videre est, animadvertere est, reperire est*, we may suppose, that *facultas, copia, opportunitas, potestas, &c.* are understood, which govern the *infinitive mode*.

CHAP.

CHAPTER XI.

1. The Latin noun to be put in the genitive is the one, that answers to the English noun following the preposition *of*, or which is thus apostrophized---*Peter's, man's, soldier's.*

2. Two nouns, in English are often put together without having the preposition *of*, or the articles *a* and *the*, between them; in this case, the Latin noun, that answers to the former English noun, must be put in the genitive case. As, *chamber door, ostium cubiculi.*

3. The latter noun may be often rendered more elegantly by using a possessive adjective, in Latin, than a noun in the genitive. In this instance, the possessive adjective must agree, in gender, case and number, with the former noun. As, *this cup of gold, poculum hoc aureum.*

4. To change the preposition *of*, that comes between two nouns, into the preposition *to*, is often elegant; when this happens, you may put the latter of two nouns, in the dative, As, *God is a father to those that love him; he is a protector to the righteous, that fear him. Deus est pater illis, qui amant illum; protector est piis, qui timent ipsum.*

5. After the genitive pronouns, *hujus, ejus, illius, cujus, &c.* Englished *his, hers, its, their, &c.* is generally understood, in Latin, *hominis, hominum,* or some other noun, with which they agree. As, *liber ejus, liber eorum; that is, hominis, hominum.*

6. When the latter noun is put in the genitive, or ablative, by being connected with an adjective of praise, or dispraise, it often happens, that the former noun is understood. As, *Di me pufilii finxerunt animi: Hor. Understand virum.*

7. The latter noun must ever signify some property, or part of the first, otherwise when connected with an adjective of praise, it is not put in the genitive, or ablative, in virtue of this connexion. Exclude, therefore, from this rule the following and similar phrases: *pulchra prole parentum; rex gelidæ oræ; gatinae filius alba; pater optimorum liberorum.*

8. The

8. The adjective of praise, or dispraise, is frequently joined; in number, case and gender, with the former noun. When this happens, the latter noun is ever in the ablative, and governed by some word understood; such as, *cum, de, in, a, ab, eus, existens, natus, præditus, affectus*, or the like. As, *Hortensius excellens ingenio, nobilitate, existimatione. Vir gravitate, et prudentia præstans: Cic. Antonius pedibus ager.* And the latter noun appears to be governed by some word understood, even when the adjective agrees with it. As, *Homo antiqua virtute. Homo infirma valetudine.*

CHAPTER XII.

1. The nouns, compounded of *con*, originally *cum*, and governing a dative, are such as the following: *Colloquium, colluctatio, collusor, cocitus, comes, commiles, commilitio, competior, compositio, congerro.*

2. When the force of the preposition falls on the casual word, it must ever be in the dative; as in this sentence: *Ne in colluctatione alter, alteri noceatur;* lest one man should be hurt in wrestling with another man.

CHAPTER XIII.

1. Neuter adjectives, governing the genitive, are generally such as signify quantity, which are *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, id, quid, hoc, aliquid, ecquid, quidquam, summum, extremum, ultimum, dimidium, medium.* To these you may add many plural adjectives, in the neuter gender: As, *Angusta viarum, opaca locorum, telluris operta: VIRGIL. Amara curarum, cuncta terrarum, acuta belli: HOR. Incerta fortunæ, antiqua fœderum, extrema periculorum: LIV. Occulta saltuum, inania famæ, amana Asia: TAC. Profunda camporum, prærupta collium, ardua montium: JUST.* And it frequently happens, that other neuter adjectives besides those mentioned, have a noun in the genitive: As, *ex diverso cali, sub obscurum noctis, subricum-juventæ.*

2. The

2. The nouns in the genitive, after neuter adjectives, are, in the opinion of the best grammarians, really governed by some nouns understood. And they mention the following; *negotium, tempus, locus, spatium, &c.* As, *tantum telluris*, so much of land; you may here understand *spatium*, so much *space* of land.

3. Participials in *ae* are words derived from verbs: As, *edax* from *edo*; *capax* from *capio*; *fugax* from *fugio*; *tenax* from *tenco*.

4. Participials, in *ans, ens* and *us*, are participles, that are used in the nature of adjectives. And it should be critically noted, that the *participial* and *participle*, though the word be frequently the same, yet differ in signification and grammatical construction. The *participle* denotes a single act done at a certain time; but the *participial*, without being limited to any particular time, denotes *habit* merely thus, *bibens vinum* denotes a person, who is now in the act of *drinking wine*: But *bibens vini* denotes a person, that is much accustomed to the *drinking of wine*. And thus *doctus philosophiam* means a person, that *has been taught philosophy*; although he may now have forgotten it, or never understood it: But *doctus philosophiae* means a person, that truly *understands philosophy*.

5. Of the adjectives governing a genitive case, the following sometimes take a dative: As, *aemulus, certus, incertus, dubius, ambiguus, conscius, manifestus, suspectus, noxius, compertus, adversus, aequalis, affinis, alienus, blandus, communis, contrarius, credulus, dispar, dissimilis, fidus, finitimus, par, propius, similis, superstes*.

Many of the adjectives governing a genitive frequently admit of a noun in the ablative, with a preposition. As, *de alieno negligens*; *avidus in pecuniis*; *certior factus de re*; *securus de bello*; *nulla in re rudis*; *doctus Latinis in literis*; *suspecta incestu*; *reus de vi*; *reus magnis in criminibus*.

7. The sentence, in which a noun follows an adjective in the genitive, is, perhaps elliptical; for the genitive noun, in most instances, may be governed, by *in re, in negotio, in causa*, and the like understood. As, *reus de se majestatis*; guilty of high treason: Supply

in re, and it is now guilty in the affair of offending the majesty.

CHAPTER. XIV.

1. Any word that signifies a part of a whole number, is called a *partitive*, whether the word be a noun, pronoun, or adjective. Thus, in this sentence, *nemo hominum immortalis est*, none of men is immortal, the word *nemo* is a *partitive*. The following words are often used as *partitives*; *ullus, nullus, solus, uter, uterque, utercumque, utervis, uterlibet, alter, alteruter, neuter, alius, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, quisquis, quisque, uniusquisque, aliquot, cætera, reliquus, and sometimes omnis and cunctus.*

2. Adjectives, that are used in a partitive sense, or meaning any part of a whole, are words, that are said to be used *partitively*. Thus *pauci veteranorum; lecti juvenum, nigra lanarum, degeneres canum, sancti deorum, &c.* adjectives used *partitively*.

3. *Comparatives* are adjectives of the comparative degree; and *superlatives* are adjectives of the superlative degree.

4. *Interrogatives* are those adjectives, or pronouns, by which we ask questions; among which we may numerate these; *quis, quisnam, quisve, uter, quot, quotus, quotusquisque.*

5. Adjectives of number, such as *primus, secundus, tertius*, and *superlatives* denoting proximity generally take a dative case after them: But if they are followed, in English, by *after*, or *from*, they take the *ablative*, with the preposition *a*, or *ab*. As, *proximus a Pompeio sedebam; I sat next to, or after Pompey: Cic. Proximus a postremo; the last save one: Cic. A superis hic mihi primus erit: OVID.*

6. The comparative degree refers to two only. Thus, in speaking of two horses, we say, *hic major equorum.* But in speaking of three or more horses, we say, *hic maximus equorum.*

7. The construction after *partitives, &c.* is sometimes varied by using *inter, ante*, and the *accusative*, or by using *de, e, ex, in*, and the *ablative*. As, *Cræsus*

R

sus

sus inter reges opulentissimus: LIV. *Unus e Stoicis acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi.*

When the *genitive* comes after *partitives*, &c. the sentence is elliptical; for the case appears to be governed by a noun understood. *As, unus ex numero judicum; or unus judex judicum.* That the sentence is elliptical is manifest: Because the above mode of construction is often used by the best classic writers. *As, quorum de numero præstantes virtute legit: VIRG. Quædam de numero laniarum: JUV. Unus e numero Persarum: MAX. Ex numero adversariorum sexcentis interfectis: CÆS.*

CHAPTER XV.

1. Among adjectives governing the dative, we may reckon those of *PROFIT* or *DISPROFIT*, such as, *benignus, bonus, utilis, commodus, felix, faustus, fructuosus, prosper, saluber, inutilis, calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exotiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer.* Of *PLEASURE* or *PAIN*, *acceptus, dulcis, gratus, jucundus, gratosus, lætus, suavus, acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.* Of *LOVE* or *HATRED*, *addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lævis, mitis, propitius, adversus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.* Of *PROXIMITY*, *finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, affinis, vicinus.* Of *LIKENESS* or *UNLIKENESS*, *similis, æmulus, geminus, dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

2. To those adjectives governing a dative, we may add the following compounded with *con*: *cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, consanguineus, conscius, consentaneus, consonans, conveniens, conterminus, contiguus, continuus, continens, and many others.*

3. Under the dative are comprehended adjectives of *equality* and *inequality*: *Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar, communis, inæqualis, inamunis, impar, lispar, discors.*

4. And

4. And so adjectives of *fitness* and *unfitness* come under this rule: *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus, ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconueniens.*

5. And finally any adjectives of *acquisition, ademption, advantage, disadvantage, or destination*, that admit *to* or *for* after them, govern the following noun in the dative case. Among which we may reckon; *obnoxius, subiectus, supplex, superstes, proprius, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, secundus, apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus, ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

6. The adjectives, that generally admit the accusative with *ad*, are the following; *accommodatus, appositus, aptus, congruus, commodus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus, utilis, ineptus, inhabilis, proclivis, pronus, propensus, paratus, inutilis; celer, tardus, velox, piger, impiger, lentus, præceps, rapidus, segnus, declivis, inclinabilis, promptus, profugus.* And it often happens, that the *accusative*, following these adjectives, is preceded by the preposition *in*.

7. And many adjectives, denoting the affections of love, hatred, or some other animal passion, admit after them the accusative case, with the prepositions *in, erga, adversus*: As, *amicus, animatus, beneficus, benevolus, benignus, pius, gratus, misericors, liberalis, acerbus, severus, sævus, crudelis, iniquus, injuriosus, infensus, &c.*

8. Of the adjectives governing the dative, we find, that the following often admit the genitive; and then they come under *the first rule*, in CHAP. XIII. Such are; *æmulus, certus, incertus, dubius, ambiguus, conscius, manifestus, suspectus, noxius, compertus, adversus, æqualis, affinis, alienus, communis, immunis, blandus, conterminus, contrarius, credulus, dispar, similis, dissimilis, fidus, finitimus, par, proprius, superstes, socius, inimicus, vicinus.*

9. It may be here noted, that the same adjective often governs both a genitive and dative, in the same sentence: As, *mens sibi conscia recti*: TER.

10. Participial adjectives, in *bilis* and *dus*, though they generally have a dative, yet they sometimes admit
the

the ablative with the preposition *a*, or *ab*. As, *admonendum a me*: CIC. *Non eos venerandos a nobis*. *Ibid.*

11. A remark, that was omitted in its proper place, may fitly be added here: The *latter* of two nouns, neither of which implying property, may be elegantly put in the dative, when preceded by the preposition *to*, or *for*, in English: As, *signum nautis*: VIRG. *a signa to the mariners*. *Non hominibus, sed virtutibus hostis*; not an enemy *to men*, but to the *virtues*: CIC. *Lupus est homo homini*; man is a wolf *to man*: PLAUT.

C H A P. XVI.

1. Of the adjectives, that come under this rule, we may reckon the following: As, *altus, crassus, densus, latus, longus, profundus*.

2. Nouns of measure are these, *digitus, palmus, pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, stadium, milliare*.

3. In denoting the measure of excess, the following ablatives are mostly used: *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, aliquanto, multo, paulo, nihilo*. And in this sense they are frequently joined with adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees, and with verbs expressing comparison.

4. The noun, that is governed in the accusative, is generally placed, in English, before these adjectives; *big, deep, high, long, broad, thick, distant*.

5. The genitives are sometimes found after adjectives of the above description. They are however, not properly governed by these adjectives, but by some of the following nouns understood; *mensura, spatium, longitudo, latitudo, altitudo*.

C H A P. XVII.

The government of these accusatives is properly figurative syntax, and is in imitation of the Grecian language: For these accusatives are really governed by the following prepositions understood; *circa, quatenus, ad, per, ad, ob, propter, quoad, or secundum*.

CHAP.

CHAPTER XVIII.

1. An adjective, in the positive state, connected with the adverb *magis*, does often govern a noun in the ablative. As, *O luce magis dilecta sorori* : VIRG.

2. After *plus*, *amplius*, *minus*, the conjunction *quam* may be elegantly omitted. As, *noctem non amplius unam* : VIRG.

3. Words in the comparative degree, besides the ablative of comparison, do naturally take after them the case which the positive is known to govern. As, *Nihil est dignius magno viro placabilitate* : SENECA.

4. It is supposed by many grammarians, that the noun in the ablative after the comparative degree, is not governed by the adjective, but by the preposition *præ*, understood; which is sometimes expressed. As, *unus præ cæteris fortior exurgit* : APUL.

CHAPTER XIX.

1. Some of the adjectives, in the first rule, often govern the genitive. As, *proles digna Deum*. *Indignus avorum*. *Carmina Digna Dea*. *Extorris regni*. *Nec jam libertatis contentos*.

2. The ablative case after these adjectives and participles, is, in reality, governed by such prepositions as the following, understood; *a*, *ab*, *cum*, *in*, *e*, *ex*, *de*. This is evident: For the best writers so often use the ablative with the prepositions expressed. As, *ex quo omnia hæc nata*: CIC. *A Marte populum Romanum generatum accipimus*: CIC. *E terra sunt cuncta creata*: LUCR. *Indignissimi ex plebeis candidati*: LIV. *Extorris ab patrio solo*: LIV. *Hannibal, profugus a patria*: LIV. *Servi a dominis, profugi*: PLIN.

3. And when these adjectives and participles take a genitive, as they often do, the genitive may be governed by some noun understood. As *captus animi*: TAC. *Contentus equorum*: HOR. *Lætus opum*: TAC. *Liber laborum*: HOR.

R. 2.

4. The

4. The participial *oriundus* comes under the second remark. As, *Ab Ulyffe Deaque Circe oriundus*: LIV. *Celesti sumus omnes femine oriundi*: LUCR.

CHAF. XX.

1. Under this rule may be comprehended adjectives of *privation*, which are these; *causus, expers, exfors, diffors, exul, extorris, exhæres, immunis, irritus, mutilus, nudus, orbus, truneus, viduus*. Of *participation*: as, *confors, particeps*. Of *power and impotence*: as, *compos, pollens, potens, impos, impotens, liber, solutus, imparatus, infirmus, parcus, purus*.

2. Adjectives of *plenty* are the following; *copiosus, dives, ferax, fertilis, fœcundus, foetus, frugifer, frequens, abundans, beatus, gravis, gravidus, immodicus, largus, prælargus, satur, locuples, mæctus, nimius, otteratus, opulentus, onustus, plenus, refertus, disfortus, tentus, tumidus, distentus, uber, turgidus*.

3. Adjectives of *want*, that come under this rule are, *egenus, indigus, inops, jejuns, inanis, modicus, pauper, sterilis, tenuis, vacuus*.

A figurative syntax is common to the Latin, as well as Grecian language, so we may conclude, that the genitive case after the adjectives is properly governed by *re, negotio*, or some general words understood: And the ablative case after these adjectives may be governed by the prepositions *in, a, ab, or ex*, understood.

For, when the ablative case is used, after any of these adjectives, we find, that the best classic writers often use some one of these prepositions. Of this the following are adduced as examples: *Frequentior in isto officio esse debens*: CIC. *Hæc se a Pâmphibò gravidam dixit esse*: TER. *Immodicus in appetendis honoribus*: PATERC. *Cadus a summo plenus*: PLAUT. *Liber a delictis*: QUINCT. *In affectibus potentissimus*: OVID. *Immunis ab arbitris*: CIC. *Mæo sum pauper in ære*: HOR. *Inops ab amicis*: CIC.

5. Many of the above adjectives often take the accusative with a preposition: As, *etiam dives in luxum*: PLIN. *Aër feralis in mortis*: LUCAN. *Hæc poena apud*

apud eos est gravissima : Cas. *Largissimus fuit in ami-*
cos : HER. *In res bellicas potens* : LIV. *Herba potens*
ad opem : QUID.

C H A P. XXII.

1. The noun, in the genitive, after *sum*, is not, strictly speaking, governed by the verb; but is the latter of two nouns, of which *officium, munus, opus, negotium, res, proprium*, or some other noun to be known by the sense, is the former.

A like construction prevails in the English language. Thus we say, this is *Pope's*; this is *Addison's*; *St. Paul's*; *St. Stephen's*; *my brother's*; *my father's*. These expressions are evidently elliptical; a noun of property or possession, is understood.

In Latin, as in English, the noun is often expressed; as, *principium munus est referre levitati multitudinis*. CIC. The preceding noun may, sometimes, be elegantly repeated, in idea. As, *hic equus est (equus) patris*.

2. These neuter pronouns, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, and possessive adjectives, are used in the nominative case, when connected with the verb *sum*, and signifying *part, duty, property, or possession*. And these neuter pronouns are used instead of the primitive pronouns, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*.

3. Possessive adjectives are such as these; *Romanus, Italicus, Gallicus, Germanicus, Anglicus, bellicus, caninus, humanus, regius, &c.*

4. Verbs of esteeming and valuing are these; *estimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, teneo*; and sometimes *sum* and *so*. But they do not take the accusative, with the genitive.

5. The genitive after verbs of esteeming and valuing are, *magni, parvi, nihili, tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, maximi, minimi, plurimi, assis, mucti, flocci, pili, teruncii, kujus, pensis*.

6. After the verb *estimo*, the word of value is sometimes put in the ablative. And this word may be either *magna, permagno, parvo, nihilo, nonnihilo*. As, *quia sit nonnihilo estimandum*: CIC.

7. When

7. When the word of value is put in the genitive, there is some noun understood, with which the adjective properly agrees: Which may occasionally be either, *pretii, artis, ponderis, momenti*, or the like. And the sentence may be thus resolved. *As, pii habent honorem Dei, esse rem magni momenti*: The pious esteem the honour of God to be a thing of great importance.

8. *Recordor, reminiscor, obliviscor*, and *memini* sometimes take the accusative. *As, operæ pretium est diligentiam majorum recordari*: *CIC.* When *memini* and *recordor* signify to make mention, they often take the ablative with *de*. *As, de quibus multi meminerunt*: *CIC.*

9. The Latin writers, in using a genitive after verbs, that signify a strong affection of mind, have imitated the idiom of the Grecian language. In examples, that come under this rule we may suppose, that *gaudio, anxietate, dolore, cruciatu, catu*, in the ablative; or some word, in the accusative, corresponding with the verb, are understood. *As, regnavit (in catu) populorum*; *Miserere (misericordie) civium*; *discrucior (dolore) animi*.

CHAPTER XXIII.

1. *Forem*, and *suppedito*, when used in a neuter sense, come under this rule. *As, in hoc campo facile suppeditat oratori apparatus*: *CIC.* *Ne qua forent pedibus vestigia rectis*: *VIRG.*

2. Under the rule of two datives may be parsed the following phrases of naming: *As, Ptolomæus, cui cognomento Philopatri fuit*: *JUST.* *Est mihi nomen Joanni. Ascanius, cui cognomen Iulo additur*: *VIRG.*

3. Instead of the dative of the thing, the nominative is sometimes used: *As, idem amor exitium pecori est, pecorisque magistro*: *VIRG.*

CHAPTER XXIV.

1. Verbs, compounded with *pra* &c. often admit other constructions: For they often take after them the accusative case, with, or without the preposition *ad*. *As, anteire omnes gloria*: *SALL.* *Accedere in oppidum*: *CIC.* *Accedere domos infernas*: *VIRG.*

2. *Te*

2. *To* is not to be considered as the sign of the dative after verbs of calling, inviting, exhorting, belonging, or that express motion, readiness, or tendency. The case after verbs of this description is generally the accusative, which is preceded by *ad*, or *in*. But the poets sometimes use the dative after verbs of motion.

CHAPTER XXV.

1. After many verbs of pleasing, hurting, offending, resisting, helping, the accusative is to be used, rather than the dative: Among which verbs, we may reckon *delecto*, *lædo*, *offendo*, *juvo*, *adjuvo*, *oppugno*.

2. The dative, or accusative, is used indifferently by the best writers, after *tempero* and *moderor*. After *refero*, *seribo*, and *mitto* we must ever use the dative, or accusative with *ad*. As *mitto tibi*, or *ad te*. The verb, *do*, when used in reference to sending a letter, must have the accusative with *ad*.

3. Of those verbs, that come under the general rule, many, it is evident, admit other constructions. As, *parcere pecuniam*: PLAUT. *Auscultare aliquem*: Desperare *republicam*: CIC. *Dono*, *impertio*, *aspergo* and *insterno*, may have either a dative of the person and accusative of the thing, or an accusative of the person and ablative of the thing.

4. The verbs, *fidò*, *confido*, *innitor*, *cedò*, *vaco*, often take the ablative, instead of the dative case. As *fidere cursu*: OVID. *Affinitate alicujus confidere*: CÆS. *Salus incolumitate ejus innititur*: TAC. *Cedere vitâ*: CIC.

CHAPTER XXVI.

1. To this rule of verbs governing the dative with the accusative, may be reduced all kind of active verbs, which, together with the thing done, admit after them the person, or thing, to, or for, whom, or which the thing is done.

2. After verbs of comparing, such as *comparo*, *confero*, *comparo*, &c. instead of the dative, the ablative is frequently

quently used, being governed by the preposition *cum*.
As, *Ut hominem cum homine comparetis* : CIC. *Conferre hanc pacem cum illo bello* : CIC.

3. Verbs of *asking, speaking to, ceasing, expecting, delivering from, receiving and taking away*, often take after them the ablative case with the prepositions *a, ab, de, e, ex*. As, *Eripite nos ex miseriis*. CIC. *De magnis divitiis si quid demas* : PLAUT. The ablative is sometimes used, when the preposition is suppressed. As *vagina eripit enssem fulmineum* : VIRG.

4. The accusative of the thing may be, and often is, elegantly suppressed. As, *detrahere alicui*, that is, *laudem, pecuniam, &c.*

5. Under this rule of *the accusative of the thing and dative of the person*, may be comprehended verbs that are compounded of *ad, in, ob, præ, sub*, and many other verbs, that have not been reduced, by grammarians to distinct classes.

CHAPTER XXVII.

These verbs *hortor, invito, voco, provooco, animo, stimulo, conformo, laceſſo, infligo, incito, ſuſcito, allicio, pellicio, inclino, conjuro, jungo, fugio, vergo, conduco, mitto, transfero*, and many others, may elegantly have *the accusative with the preposition ad, or in, instead of the dative.*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

1. *Carpo, corripio, calumnior, criminor, culpo, punio, reprehendo, taxo, traduco and vituperor*, govern a genitive of *the person*; and accusative of *the crime or thing*.

2. *Accuſo, incuſo, and inſimulo* do often take two accusative cases. As, *multa que ſe incuſat* : VIRG. *Quid me incuſas?* Clitipho : TER.

3. Verbs of *admoniſhing and warning* do ſometimes, take the ablative with the preposition *de*, instead of the genitive of the *thing*. As, *De quo vos paulo ante admoqui* : CIC. And according to the moſt approved authors, verbs of this deſcription may have *the thing or crime,*

crime, of which one is admonished, in the accusative, or genitive, or in the ablative with *de*. As, *eos hoc moneo*: CIC.

4. Verbs of *acquitting*, *condemning* and *accusing*, may have the ablative of the *thing*, or *crime*, with the preposition *de*, expressed, or understood. As, *plurimos capite dāmnavit*: EUR. *Condemnabo te eodem crimine*: CIC. *Consulem suspitione absolvere*: LIV. *De repetundis eum postulavit*: CIC. *Alios morte, alios pecuniā condemnabas*: SALL.

5. The genitive of the *crime*, or *thing*, that is used after verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *warning* and *acquitting*, appears in reality, not to be governed by the verbs, but by some noun in the ablative understood. Among these nouns we may reckon the following; *Actione*, *nomine*, *re*, *multa*, *pæna*, *culpa*, *causa*, *peccato*, *crimine*, *scelere*: which are governed by the preposition *DE*. As, *condemnavit illum majestatis læsæ*; that is, *de crimine majestatis læsæ*.

6. When two accusatives are used after these verbs, the accusative of the *crime*, or *thing*, is properly governed by *circa*, or *quoad ad*, understood; which construction comes under the figure of speech, called *synecdoche*.

CHAP. XXIX.

1. Verbs of *asking*, *beseeching*, *intreating*, &c. do sometimes change the accusative of the *person*, into the ablative, with a preposition. As, *deum obtestemur, veniamque oremus ab eo*. *Ab amico argentum roges*: PLUT. *Quid studia a te flagitent tu videbis*: VIRG.

2. Verbs of *teaching* often change the accusative of the *thing* into the ablative with the preposition *de*. As, *senatus edocet de itinere hostium*: SALL. *Erudire aliquem de republica*: CIC. *Quis est tam arrogans, quam de rebus divinis collegium pontificum docere?* CIC.

3. After these verbs, *instruo*, *instituo*, *formo*, *informo*, *imbuo*, the ablative of the *thing* is generally used without any preposition. As, *orationum lectione discipulos instruere*: LIV. *Pectus præceptis format amicis*: HOR. *Quibus illi STUDIIIS ab ineunte ætate imbuerat*: CIC.

4. Other

4. Other verbs, besides those mentioned in the rule do often take after them two accusatives, one of the *person* and the other of the *thing*. As, *argentum, quod habes condonamus te*: TER. *Non quæ te aliquid juberent*: CIC.

5. Verbs of clothing often change one accusative into the dative, or ablative. As, *induit se toga, or sibi togam*.

6. The accusative of the *thing*, after the verbs of the foregoing description, is not properly governed by the verb; but by some preposition understood; such as *ab, circa, secundum, ad, or quoad ad*. The government of this accusative does, hence, belong to *figurative syntax*.

CHAP. XXX.

1. Verbs of *filling* and *emptying* do often govern the genitive of the thing with which any thing is filled, or emptied off. As *meni pateram implevit regina*: VIRG. *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet*: PLAUT.

2. The passives of *impleo, compleo, expleo, saturo, and obsaturo*, do sometimes take the genitive. As, *implentur veteris Bacchi*: VIRG. *Cum completus jam mercatorum career esset*: CIC. *Sanguinis expletis naribus*: LUCRET. *Istius obsaturabere*: TER.

3. The ablative case after verbs of *filling, emptying, loading, &c.* is not properly governed by the verbs, but by some preposition not expressed; such as, *a, ab, de, e, ex, cum*. As, *solvere naves e portu*: CIC. *Laxate animum a laboribus*: LIV. *Arcem urbis ab incendio liberavi*: CIC.

CHAP. XXXI.

1. The verb, *pascor* sometimes takes the accusative. As, *pascuntur sylvas*: VIRG.

2. *Careo* and *egeo* take the accusative. As, *id careo*: PLAUT. *Multa egeo*: GELL.

3. *Potiar*, when signifying to have the chief command, or to get enemies under power, ever governs the genitive. As, *potiri urbis; potiri hostium*: SALL. *Potiri rerum*: CIC.

4. *Epulor, vescor, fungor, and potior* often govern the accusative. As, *si caprinum jecur vescantur; Pullos epulari*:

epulari: PLIN. *Ut munera fungerentur*: TAC. *Gens urbem nostram potitura*: CIC. And some old authors used *fruor*, *utor* and *abutor* as governing the accusative. As, *uteris, ut voles, operam meam*: PLAUT. *Operam abutitur*: TER. *Ingenium frui*: TER. But,

5. The ablative is not, in reality, governed by the verbs, *abutor*, *communico*, *consto*, &c. But by the preposition *a*, *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, understood. And when a noun, in the genitive is used after any of these verbs, some noun in the ablative, such as *imperio*, *re*, *causa*, *negotio*, *præsentia*, *copia*, or *ope*, with a preposition, is understood. And

6. With some of these verbs, the preposition is often used. As, *in virtute recte gloriamur*; *Cujus in vita nitentur salus civitatis*; *cum graviter ex intestinis laborarem*; *cum constemus ex animo et corpore*: CIC.

C H A P. XXXII.

1. *Valeo* to be worth, frequently governs the accusative.
 2. The noun after verbs of distance is often governed by prepositions understood; such as, *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*, *de*.
 As, *longe distat a nobis*.

C H A P. XXXIII.

1. The noun, in the ablative, signifying the instrument, cause, or manner, is really governed by some preposition understood: For the best writers do often express the preposition before this noun. As *semper magno cum metu dicere incipio*: CIC. *Solito matrum de more locuta est*: VIRG.

2. The noun, that is properly the instrument seldom admits the preposition *cum*, except when concomitancy is implied in the expression. When this happens, *cum* is ever expressed or understood. It is expressed in the following instances: *Desinant obsidere cum gladiis curiam*: CIC. *Ingressus est cum gladio*. *Illi indignantes magno cum murmure montis circum claustra fremunt*: VIRG.

3. The noun, that is the cause, does sometimes, take the accusative with *per* or *propter*; or the ablative, with

S

with

with *de, e, ex, or præ*. As *legibus propter metum paret*: CIC. *Nec loqui præ morore potuit*: CIC.

4. The noun of *cause* is known by asking the question, *why? wherefore?* The noun of *manner*, by *how?* And the *instrument*, by *what? wherewith?*

5. The matter of which any thing is made admits the same construction as the noun that is the cause. As, *are cavo clypeus*: VIRG. And sometimes a preposition is used before this noun. As, *templum de marmore*: VIRG. *Pocula ex auro*: CIC. *Naves factæ ex robore*: CÆS.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

1. These passive verbs of clothing and their participles *induor, amictor, vestior, cingor, accingor*, and also *exuor, discingor*, take an accusative in the poetical writings, but in the prosaical writings they take an ablative. As, *sic fatus, deinde comantem Androgei galeam, clypeique insigne decorum induitur*: VIRG. *Clypeum que auroque trilicem loriam induitur*: VIRG. *Cinguntur tempora*: VIRG. *Inutile ferrum cingitur*: VIRG. *Exuvias indutus Achillei*: VIRG. *Exutus omnibus fortunis*: TAC. *Veste Arabica induitur*: CURT. *Hispano cingitur gladio*: LIV.

2. Verbs passive of *depriving, freeing, binding, loosing, loading*, govern the ablative.

3. Verbs passive of *admonishing, accusing, condemning, acquitting*, govern the genitive.

4. Verbs passive of *valuing, esteeming*, govern the genitives *tanti, quanti, parvi, magni, nihili, &c.*

5. Verbs passive of *giving, declaring, taking away, comparing, &c.* govern the dative. And,

6. Verbs passive of *clothing, &c.* govern the accusative of the thing.

CHAPTER XXXV.

1. The agent, or doer, after passive verbs, is not very frequently used in the dative case. This construction

struction is sometimes, however used. As, *nec mihi visa nec audita*: VIRG.

2. The agent is sometimes used after passive verbs, in the ablative, without the preposition. As, *Deferor conjuge*: OVID. But even in this use the governing preposition is understood.

3. Many active verbs take after them an ablative with a preposition. Among which we may reckon verbs of *knowing, perceiving, receiving, disagreeing, inquiring, desiring, asking, entreating, ceasing, removing, taking away, disjoining, banishing, dismissing, buying, striving, joining, and expecting.*

4. Although the agent after passive verbs is commonly in the ablative, preceded by a preposition; yet the dative case is generally used, when preceded by the passive participle. As, *fama mortis filii sui audita philosopho.*

CH A P. XXXVI.

1. Among the impersonal verbs, having *to* or *for* after them and governing the dative, we may reckon the following: *Accidit, beneficit, competit, conducit, confert, constat, contingit, convenit, displicet, dolet, apparet, evenit, libet, expedit, libet, licet, liquet, malefit, nocet, obest, placet, patet, prestat, prodest, restat, satisficit, stat, sufficit, superest, vacat.*

2. These verbs, besides the dative of the person, or thing, have frequently another verb, in the infinitive mode, and is, in fact, used as a nominative to them. And besides this infinitive, as a nominative, other nominatives are frequently expressed. As, *id, hoc, illud, iste, quod*, or some general noun. As, *si tibi id minus libebit*: CIC. *Marito ista non licent*: CAT. *si habes quod liqueat*: CIC.

3. *Interest* and *refert*, besides taking occasionally nouns, in the genitive, do also admit these genitive adjectives; *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem.* As, *parvi refert abs te jus dici*: CIC. But,

4. The primitive pronouns, *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, after *interest* and *refert* must ever be made by the ablative feminine of their possessives; as, *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra.* Some grammarians say, that these pronouns

nouns are in the accusative plural, neuter gender, and agree with *negotia*, or some occasional noun understood, and they supply the construction thus: Refert mea, that is, refert se ad *mea negotia*.

5. Good authors often join with these two verbs, these adverbs, *tantum, quantum, multum, plurimum, infinitum, parum, nihil, maxime, minime*, and others. As, *multum refert*.

6. The nominative to these verbs is sometimes expressed. As, *illud mea magni interest*: CIC. Magni refert *studium atque voluntas*: LUCK.

7. In using the genitive after *interest* and *refert* the construction is elliptical and may be thus supplied: As, refert *patris*; that is, refert se ad *negotia patris*.

8. After *miserescit, miseret, piget, pœnitet, pudet* and *tædet*, the genitive noun is often changed into a cognate verb, in the infinitive. As, *tædet me vivere*, for *tædet me vitæ*.

9. The pronoun personal, in the accusative, after these verbs is frequently understood. As, *scelerum si pœnitet*: HOR. In this example, the pronoun, *nos*, is elegantly understood.

10. The genitive case after these verbs is properly governed by some noun, understood; such as, *negotium, cogitatio, respectus, status, fortuna, factum*, or some other occasional noun. As, *pœnitet me peccati*; resolved thus; *factum* or *cogitatio* or *negotium, peccati pœnitet me*. As there are no impersonal verbs, in any language, so it is not, hence, improper to say, that the nominative cases to those verbs, which have been called impersonal, are understood.

11. The agent, or doer, after these verbs, in the passive, is ever in the ablative with a preposition; and, when this happens, the verb may serve for any number, or person. As, *legitur a me, a te, a nobis, a vobis, ab illis*.

12. When the agent, or doer, is understood, the verb is in the neuter gender and may serve for any number, or person. As, *ventum erat*, when *they* had come.

13. Decet, instead of the accusative, does sometimes take the dative. As, *ita nobis decet*: TER.

14. The

14. The verbs, *fallit, fugit, præterit* and *latet*, when used as *third personal* verbs, take a pronoun in the accusative, and a verb in the infinitive. As, *fugit me ad te scribere*: CIC. But the infinitive verbs, in sentences of this construction, are properly the *nominatives*. As, *to write to thee, escaped me; scribere ad te, fugit me.*

15. *Cæpit, incipet, desinit, debet, solet*, and *potest* are used as *third personal* verbs, when followed by the infinitive of similar verbs. In this case, the word, that seems to be the *nominative case* to the *former* verb, must be in such *case* as the *latter* verb governs. As, *solet pudere pueros grævos cedere ullis æqualium doctrinâ.*

CHAPTER XXXVII.

1. As gerunds are properly verbal nouns, they are used in any *case*, except the *vocative*.

2. The gerund *in dum*, of the *nominative* is the proper agent, or *nominative* to the verb *est*, when the phrase imports some *necessity*, or obligation falling on a person. The person on whom the necessity falls, is put *in Latin*, in the *dative case*. But the person is frequently suppressed. As, *si pereundum sit*. In this instance, *mihi* is elegantly suppressed.

The noun, that governs the gerund *in di*, is sometimes omitted. As, *cum haberem in animo navigandi*: That is, *propositum navigandi*: CIC.

4. The gerund *in dum*, of the *accusative* is sometimes governed by the verb *habeo*. As, *Quum enitendum haberemus*: PLIN.

5. To avoid unpleasing sound, the good classic writers seldom use *gerundial participles*, in the *genitive plural*. Instead of *tempus curandarum rerum*, they say, *tempus curandi res.*

N. B. If the student choose to see farther remarks on *gerunds* and *gerundial participles*, he may consult my *Grammatical Institute of the Latin Language.*

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

1. In the case of *participles, gerunds and supines* a twofold construction prevails among the most elegant Latin authors. Participles are used in the first place, as having the nature of adjectives, and as such they simply agree with their nouns, in *number, case and gender*. When participles are used in the nature of verbs, they commonly govern the case of their verbs.

Gerunds and supines in the second place, are often used as having the nature of nouns, and take their government, in many respects. But when they partake the nature of their verbs, they admit in general, a similar government.

2. Verbal nouns, *in bundus*, govern the case of their verbs. As, *populabundus agros*: GELL. *Gratulabundus patria*: JUST.

3. *Pertæsus*, instead of the accusative, does often take the genitive. As, *quos pertæsum magni incepti- rerum que tuarum est*: VIRG. *Lentitudinis, eorum per- tæsa*: TAC.

4. As gerunds are often used in the nature of nouns, so they do, sometimes, admit another noun after them in the genitive. As, *quum illorum videndi gratia me in forum contuliffem*: CIC. *Facultas agrorum condo- nandi*: CIC. *Nominandi istorum erit copia*: PLAUT.

5. Instead of using the infinitive, or conjunctive mode, the participle of the future in *das*, may be used in conjunction with *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, accipio, mitto, relinquo*, and many other verbs. As, *demus nos philosophiæ excolendas*: CIC.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

1. This ablative case is said to be absolute, because it is not governed by any part of speech whatever.

2. When the participle is not expressed with the noun, we may then suppose, that *existente* in the abla- tive singular, or *existentibus* in the ablative plural, is understood. As, *me suatore hoc factum*: PLAUT. *I*
being

Bring the adviser (that is, *existente*) this was done. In like manner we say, *cæteris paribus, fatis auctoribus, Saturno rege, me ignaro, aspera hyeme, me puero, invita Minerva, Deo duce.*

3. The participle is sometimes expressed alone, and then the noun *re, causa, negotio*, or some other occasional noun is understood, with which the participle does agree. As, *nondum comperto* quam regionem hostes petissent: LIV. *Audito*, it being heard; that is *re facta*, &c.

4. *Doing, being, having, knowing*, or some English participle in *ing*, together with *after, when, whilst*, are signs of the ablative absolute.

5. Not only the *participle* of the *present time* active is joined with a noun in the ablative absolute, but the *participle* of the *perfect time* passive obtains this construction. And the best authors do often use the participle of the future in *rus*, in connection with a noun absolute. As, *venturo Cæsare*: MART.

6. To use the *perfect participle* of deponent verbs, in the ablative absolute, is said to be unclassical. And we may not hence say, *Cæsar, his locutis, pugnam instauravit*; but *Cæsar, hæc locutus, or his diis*, &c.

7. This *noun absolute* may be changed into the *nominative*; and the *participle* into its verb, by using *cum, dum, quando, scilicet, quoniam*. As, *Augusto regnante, Christus crucifixus fuit*. Changed; *dum Cæsar regnavit*, &c.

8. Although this ablative is said to be *absolute*, yet some grammarians think it may be governed by *sub, cum, a, or ab*, understood.

C H A P. XL.

1. As the *supines* in *um* and *u*, are, in the opinion of good grammarians, simply verbal nouns, they may be found in the accusative and ablative of the fourth declension of nouns.

The *supine* in *um*, being found in the accusative case, may be governed by *ad*, or *in*, understood. The construction is thus resolved; *eo ad cubitum, I go to bed.*

bed. *Ibant ad venatum*: They went to hunt, or to the hunting.

The prepositions are sometimes expressed, and used as governing the supine in *um*, in the accusative case. As, *in commutatum veniunt*: LUCR. Non omnis tempestas apes *ad pastum* prodire longius patitur: VAR.

The supine in *u*, being found in the ablative, may be governed by the preposition, *ex*, *e*, or *in*, understood. The construction is thus resolved; *terribilis in visu*; terrible in the sight, or in the appearance, or in being seen.

The prepositions are sometimes expressed. As, *in receptu difficilis*: QUINCT. *E pastu vitulus ad tecta reducit*: VIRG. *Et e pastu decedens agmine magno corvorum increpuit densis exercitus alis*: VIRE.

2. The supine in *um*, is sometimes used after a participle, implying motion. As, *admissi spectatum*: HOR.

3. This supine, when connected with *iri*, forms what is called the future time of the infinitive passive. And, as it partakes of the nature of a noun, it never changes its ending. Classic writers do not say, *prælectiones auditas iri*, but *prælectiones auditum iri*.

4. Sentences in which the supine in *um*, is used, may admit many variations. As, *ivit emptum chartam*; *ivit ut emat chartam*; *ivit chartæ emendæ causa*; *ivit ad emendum chartam*; *ivit ad emendam chartam*; *ivit empturus chartam*; *ivit chartam emendi causa*; *ivit chartæ emendæ*; *ivit qui chartam emat*; *ivit emere chartam*. Of these variations the four first are elegant and classical; the succeeding four are not much used; and the last, never, except by the poets; and then, for the sake of metre.

5. The supine in *u*, is sometimes put after verbs, that express motion from a place. As, *primus cubitu surgat*: CATO. *Nunc obsonatu tedeo*; PLAUT.

6. This supine is frequently used after these substantive nouns; *opus*, *fas*, *nefas*. As, *quod scitu opus est*: CIC. *Nefas dictu*: CIC. *Fas dictu*: CIC.

7. Instead of saying *facile actu*, we may say *facile agi*; *ad agendum facile*; and *facile actione*.

SI

CHAP.

C H A P. XLI.

1. Although nouns, signifying the time *when* are generally put in the ablative, yet they are sometimes put in the accusative. As, *id tempus* creatus est consul. And likewise nouns, that signify the *continuance* of time may be used in the ablative. As, *imperavit triennio, et decem mensibus octoque diebus.*

2. These nouns are in fact, governed by prepositions understood. The prepositions are frequently expressed. As, *furgunt de nocte latrones* : HOR. *Habebit Senatus in hunc annum quem sequatur* : CIC.

3. We find often in the Classics, these phrases ; *illud horæ, isthuc ætatis, hoc ætatis, id temporis.* Upon which it may be observed, that the pronouns, are used in the accusative singular, and governed by *ad* or *circa*, understood. And as they are neuter pronouns, they, consequently, take the genitive case after them. But phrases of this nature may be changed into *illa horâ, isthac ætate, hac ætate, eo tempore*, and governed by a preposition understood.

C H A P. XLII.

N. B. For particular remarks under this chapter, the student may consult my grammatical Institute of the Latin Language.

C H A P. XLIII.

1. Many of the adverbs, that govern the genitive, are by enallage, used for those words, from which they are derived. Of this sort we may reckon the following : *Abunde, largiter, nimis, partim, quod, parum, minime, satius.*

These adverbs are used by the above figure of speech, in lieu of *satius, minimum, parvum, quod* a neuter pronoun, *paræ, minimum, largium, abundantum, or abundantia.* And

as these latter words take a genitive after them, it is suitable that their adverbs should take the same case.

2. *Instar* is properly a neuter indeclinable noun; and the genitive after it may be the latter of two nouns. As *Instar* is a noun we may see the propriety of using the preposition *ad* before it.

3. *Ergo*, which is said to be used adverbially, in Latin, is, in reality, a noun, derived from the greek *εργον*; and may therefore take a genitive case.

4. The adverbs of time, that govern the genitive, are these, *tunc, postea, inde, interea*.

5. The adverbs of place are these, *huc, hucine, eo, unde, nusquam, usquam, ibidem, longe, alicubi, quocunque, ubi, quo, quovis, aliquo, ubinam, ubivis, alibi, alicubi, ubique, ubiubi*.

6. *Pridie* and *postridie* govern sometimes the genitive and sometimes the accusative. After these adverbs it is more classical to say, *Kalendas, Nonas, and Idus, then Kalendarum, nonarum, iduum*. The adverb *pridie* is used instead of *priori die*; and *postridie*, instead of *postero die*.

7. The sentences, in which the adverbs of time and place are used, are, in fact, elliptical. And their construction may be supplied by the use of *loco, re, tempore, negotio*, or some other occasional word. As, *ubi, gentium*; that is, *ubi loco gentium*.

8. *Tempori, vesperi, and luci* are the old ablatives of *tempus, vesper, and lux*: But they are used adverbially.

CHAP. XLIV.

1. As interjections are simply the signs of some sudden emotion or passion of the mind, they do not, strictly speaking, govern any case whatever. For,

2. The vocative case is put absolute, or independent; and may be used with, or without, an interjection. As, *Musa, mihi causas memora*: VIRG.

3. The sentence is elliptical, when the nominative comes after an interjection; and may be thus supplied: *Pro, scelus*, that is, *Pro, hoc est scelus*.

4. The sentence is elliptical, when the dative comes after an interjection and may be thus supplied: *Hei mihi*, that is, *hei! mihi est miseria*.

5. The

5. The sentence is elliptical, when the accusative comes after an interjection, and may be thus supplied: *Heu! vos miseros*; that is, *heu quos sentio vos esse miseros*.

6. The interjections are frequently used, without being connected with any case. As, *hei! vercor*. *Heus! proximus sum egomet mihi*: TER.



15 00 61